Treatises
of
Fistula in Ano

AND OF FISTULÆ IN OTHER PARTS OF THE BODY, AND OF APOSTEMES MAKING FISTULÆ, AND OF HÆMORRHOID AND TENASMON, AND OF CLYSTERS, ALSO OF CERTAIN OINTMENTS, POWDERS AND OILS.

Early English Text Society.
Original Series. No. 139.
1910.
BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 13, UNTER DEN LINDEN.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.
PLATE I. A Fourteenth-Century Master Surgeon operating for Fistula in Ano.
To

Joseph Frank Payne,

M.D. Oxon., F.R.C.P. Lond.,

These Treatises
of Arderne
are Dedicated
as an Acknowledgment of his
Zeal in the Cause of
The History of English Medicine.
LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

A Master of Surgery in the act of operating upon a fistula in ano. He wears the cap and gown of his degree

Frontispiece

PLATE I. A Mastery of Surgery in the fourteenth century

Facing page 1

PLATE II. The instruments used by John Arderne in the cure of fistula, from a fifteenth-century manuscript in the British Museum (Sloane 2002) page 10

PLATE III. The instruments used in the operation of a fistula in ano from the early fifteenth-century manuscript (Sloane 6) printed in this book. The instruments named from above downwards are:—the sequere me or probe: the syringa or syringe: the acus rostrata or snowted needle: the fraenum Cæsaris or fourfold thread: the cochlear or shield: the tendiculum and wrayste or vertile (cf. p. 112). The left-hand figure shows the surgeon probing a sinus in the buttock; the right-hand figure shows the tendiculum, wrayste and fraenum Cæsaris in position just before two sinuses are laid open in the left buttock. The snowted needle is about to be drawn through a series of fistulæ in the right buttock Facing page 10

PLATE IV. A series of drawings to illustrate the various occupations of a leech page 99
FOREWORD

The history of mediæval medicine, says Prof. E. Nicaise, has been divided into four great epochs. The first, lasting from the fifth to the eleventh century, was remarkable for the Arabian school of medicine. The second period embraced the eleventh and twelfth centuries, and witnessed the rise of the schola Salernitana: it was the time of the Crusades and of that intermingling of the East and West from which sprang the marvellous work of the twelfth and thirteenth centuries. The work of the third period was all too short, and was brought to a sudden close by the Black Death which ravaged the world in 1348-9. It is properly described as the beginning of the modern era, the pre-Renaissance. A mere list of the Universities established will give some idea of the intellectual activity of the time. Montpellier (1137); Paris (1176); Oxford (1200); Cambridge (1209); Padua (1222); Naples (1224); Salamanca (1230); Toulouse (1230); Orléans (1231); Valladolid (1250); Seville (1254); Coimbra-Lisbon (1290); Lerida (1300); Avignon (1303); Rome (1303); Grenoble (1332); Angers (1337); Pisa (1343); Prague (1347); Florence (1349); Perpignan (1349); Huesca (1359); Cracovia (1364); Pavia (1365); Orange (1365); Vienna (1365); Erfurt (1379); Heidelberg (1385); Cologne (1388); Buda (1389). The fourth period was retrograde. Wars abroad and economic troubles at home seemed to have crushed the spirit of the few survivors from the previous generation.

John Arderne belongs to the thirteenth century in spirit and in thought, although the accident of birth placed him in the next generation. He was well educated, and he reflects the current ideas of his time just as every well-educated surgeon at the present day is an epitome of his surroundings. Nothing is known of his history except for the autobiographical details given in the various manuscripts of his works and a small body of floating tradition which has been handed down through the centuries.

1 "La grande chirurgie de Guy de Chauliac." Paris, 1890, pp. x-xv.
2 The dates appended to the Universities are merely intended to show when each was known to be actually in existence—a few were created, the majority developed from small beginnings.
Forewords.

Biographical Facts.

There seems to be little doubt that he was a member of the family of Arderne, or Arden, who claimed descent from Saxon times. The best known representative of the family was Turchill or Turketil, styled de Warwick in Domesday, and De Eardene in the Register of Abingdon Abbey, "being one of the first here in England that, in imitation of the Normans, assumed a surname." The Ardernes were Lords of Watford in Northamptonshire from 1140, and spread thence to Cheshire and Staffordshire. In the Aldford, Cheshire, branch the name of John was borne hereditarily by John de Arderne (fl. 1220); Sir John de Arderne (1266–1308); Sir John de Arderne (1307–1349); and John de Arderne (fl. 1332). It was possibly the last named John Arderne who received a grant of land in Connaught from Edward the Black Prince (Appendix, p. 105), and who is mentioned in John of Gaunt's Register as having been appointed Seneschal of the manor of Passenham in Northamptonshire on October 7th, 1374. The name of John Arderne, or John de Arderne, therefore, was well known in London, in the midlands and in the counties of Cheshire and Lancaster during the fourteenth century, but there is no evidence forthcoming at present to show to which branch of the family the surgeon belonged.

The date of Arderne's birth is fixed by his own statement that he was seventy in the first year of the reign of Richard II. Edward III died at Sheen on June 21, 1377, and was immediately succeeded by Richard II. Arderne, therefore, was born in 1307. It is clear too that he practised abroad, for he says that he tried a remedy "in foreign

1 Dugdale, 675.
3 Perhaps it was this John Arderne who is mentioned in Rymer's "Federa" (vol. ii, part 2, p. 119, col. 2). He was commanded to attend the King in war to Guienne in the year 1324.
4 I, 337, leaf 64, back. I am indebted to the kindness of Mr. Sydney Armitage-Smith for this reference.
5 In London John Arderne was a Fishmonger in 1361, and Richard Arderne was a prominent Skinner in 1376. John Arderne, esquire, was living in the parish of St. Mary Aldermariachurch in 1425. (Dr. Reginald Sharpe's "Calendar of Wills—Court of Husting." London, part 2, pp. 68 and 439.)
6 Sloane MS. 75, leaf 146. De Curâ Oculi. "Et sciant presentes et futuri quoad Ego Magister Johannes de Ardern, cirurgorum minimus, hunc libellum propriâ manu meâ exaravi apud London; anno, videlicet regis Ricardi 2di primo et etatis me lxx. ("And be it known to present and future generations that I, Master John of Arden, the least of the surgeons, scribbled this book with my own hand in London in the year, viz. the first year of the reign of King Richard the Second and in the seventieth year of my age.")
parts upon one King and two Bishops." 1 I have no doubt in my own mind that the king was John of Gaunt, "Roy de Castell et de Leon, Duc de Lancastre," who was always addressed as "Monseigneur d'Espaigne." 2 In 1376 John of Gaunt was the best hated man in England, says Mr. Sydney Armitage-Smith in his valuable study of his life. It was undesirable, therefore, John Arderne would think, to draw too close attention to the fact that he had once been attached to his person, for the book was written in this very year 1376. The precaution was wise in view of the events which happened when a London mob burnt the Duke's palace at the Savoy in 1381 and killed his physician, merely because he was a trusted and valued friend. 3 Mr. Sydney Armitage-Smith 4 says that the name of the physician was William de Appleton, and that he was retained by the Duke of Lancaster at 40 mares per annum for life. An interesting example of the caution which was habitual to Arderne in this matter is to be found in two of the manuscripts in the British Museum. The one 5 tells of a certain noble knight in the service of the Duke of Lancaster at Algeciras, in Spain, who had a sudden attack of facial paralysis, which so twisted his mouth that it was drawn back nearly to his ear and prevented him from speaking. The manuscript continues, "I, the aforesaid John Arderne, made a cure of him." The second manuscript 6 gives an account of the same case, but, instead of giving any name to the leech who cured him, it merely says "for whom the King of Spain's doctor made a cure in this way." 7 The latter MS. is a magnificently written copy on vellum, with such carefully executed illustrations that it is usually exhibited in the British Museum as an example of fourteenth-century work. It was possibly a presentation copy to John of Gaunt himself; the first one is a poorly written paper manuscript, such as would have an ordinary

1 MS. bought at the Towneley Sale. It is now in the Surgeon General's Library at Washington, U.S.A. The extract on leaf 54 is, "Hoc probavi in uno rege et duobus episcopis in transmarinis partibus." It is quoted in the "Johns Hopkins Bulletin," vol. v. 1894, pp. 21 and 67, but I am indebted to the courtesy of Lieut.-Col. Walter D. McCaw, Librarian S. G. O., for a complete transcription of the passage.


3 Johannes de ordine Minorum in armis bellicis strenuus, in physica peritis-simus, domino Johanni duci Lancastriæ familiarissimus."—Knighton's Chronicle-Rolls Series, ii, 133.


7 "Quidam miles nobilis Ducis Lancastriæ apud Aegizir in Hispania passus est subito torturam oris ita quod os ejus distractum fuit fere retro aurem nec loqui poterat. Ego Predictus Joh. Ardern tales feci sibi curam" (MS. 3548). "Cui medicus regis hyspaniae tales curam fecit," says MS. 29301.
circulation. It was copied at a much later date, for the scribe, by mistake, has written Henrici de Arderne, and it belonged to Robert May.

Haeser¹ says that perhaps Arderne was educated at Montpellier and practised in France as a military surgeon on the English side during the earlier and most brilliant years of the One Hundred Years' War, E. H., who translated his “Latin practises and consailes concerning the helping of all diseases,”² in the early part of the seventeenth century, is responsible for the statement that he practised at Antwerp, and he certainly knew a few words of Flemish, for, in speaking of the Nightshade, he says that in Flanders it is called “Naghtstach” (p. 32).

Dr. Milward³ believed that he was present at the battle of Creçy, but this I take leave to doubt. He practised, or at any rate he treated patients, in Wiltshire,⁴ and from 1349 until 1370 he lived at Newark in Nottinghamshire.⁵ He came to London in 1370, but I have found no record of where he lived. It was the year of his grand climacteric, in an age when men lived a much shorter time than now, yet he practised with vigour and success for five or six years. By this time he had secured a competence and he set himself to write. In 1376 he issued his treatise on the cure of Fistula in ano which is here printed, “written,” as he says, “with my own hand, in the year when the strong and warlike Lord” (Edward the Black Prince) “was taken to God.”⁶ It is possible that the treatise on Cysters⁷ was already written; it is certain that the treatise “De cura oculorum” was written in 1377,⁸ but we know nothing more than this about John Arderne. There is nothing to show that he was living in the reign of Henry IV, who came to the throne in 1399. The reference to Henry IV (p. 74), “With this medicine was kyng Henry of ynglond cured of the going out of the lure,” is a side-note written in a different hand in some of the MSS. and has only crept into the English text in

¹ “Lehrbuch d. geschichte der Med.,” ed. 3, Jena, 1875, i, 784.
² Sloane MS. 2271.
⁵ Sloane MS. 2271.
⁶ “Et eodem anno quo Dominus strennus et bellicosus Princeps migravit ad Dominum, scripsit libellum istum manu propria, viz. Millesimo ccclxxvi. . . quem Deus absolvat, quia fuit flos Milicie Mundi sine pare.”
⁷ See postea, p. 74 et seqq.
⁸ P. x, note 6, of these Forewords.
process of time. The Hunterian copy of the Commentary in English on "Aegidii Corboliensis tractatus metricus de Urinis," which mentions the leech of "our Lord King the most illustrious prince Henry the Fourth, on whose soul may God have Mercy, Amen," was clearly written after 20 March, 1413, and the scribe has forgotten Arderne's right name, for he says that it is written by Master John Arderon.1

It seems to me that the easiest way to correlate the various facts recorded about John Arderne is to assume that he was attached at first to Henry Plantagenet, the first Duke of Lancaster, and afterwards to John of Gaunt, who married his younger daughter Blanche as his first wife—the White Lady of Chaucer's "Book of the Duchess." Henry, as Earl of Derby, was at Antwerp in 1338, and John Arderne is said to have practised there. Henry, in company with the Earl of Salisbury, fought against the Moors at the siege of Algeciras in 1343, when much use was made of Greek fire, and gunpowder is said to have been employed for the first time. John Arderne had been to Algeciras because he treated a knight there who was suffering from a trivial complaint from which he would have recovered during the long journey, if he had visited Arderne in England. Arderne was interested both in Greek fire and in gunpowder, for he gives a receipt for making Ignis Graecus and for an artificial fire to burn ships. Henry of Lancaster was Lieutenant and Captain of Aquitaine in 1345, and was granted the town of Bergerac with the right of coinage in 1347. John Arderne nowhere says specifically that he served with the Earl of Derby, Duke of Lancaster, but he betrays an intimate knowledge of this campaign, for he gives the names of the towns in the order in which they were reached by the invading army and not in their geographical succession; his knowledge is even remarkable, for he gives the towns in the order in which they were reached by a single column of the army, and he was writing more than thirty years after the events.2


2 "The forsaid sir Adam (p. 1, line 12 et seqq.) forsooth suffering from fistula in ano asked counsel of all the leeches and surgeons that he could find in Gascony, at Bordeaux, at Bergerac, Toulouse, Narbonne and Poitiers." Arderne seems to have had a soft place in his heart for Narbonne. He calls one of his favourite plasters Emplastron de Nerbon, and says, "Istud emplastron dictur Norbon quia quamvis sit nigrum tamen bonum." ("This emplastre is called Noirbon, for although it be black nevertheless it is good." P. 91, l. 31.)
The campaign ended and the Duke of Lancaster returned to London, 13th January, 1347-8, and died of the plague at Leicester in 1361. John Arderne may then have attached himself to John of Gaunt, the son-in-law of the Duke, who called himself King of Castile and Leon from his marriage with Constance, daughter of Don Pedro I of Castile, in September 1371, until his own daughter Katherine married Enrique III in 1388, and became Queen of Castile and Leon in 1390. If Arderne was really surgeon to the King of Castile it must have been after the year 1370, and this perhaps gives the reason why John Arderne left Newark after he had practised there for so many years. Mr. Armitage-Smith tells me, however, that there is no record of such an appointment in the Duke’s roll which he has lately published.

**Arderne as a Surgeon.**

John Arderne is a good example of a type of surgeon who has happily never been absent from England. He is the earliest example that we know at present, but he was followed in direct succession by Thomas Morstede, who was present at Agincourt in 1415, and was buried in St. Olave, Upwell, in the Jewry, in 1450; by Richard Ferris, who wrote nothing, but was revered as their master by many succeeding generations of surgeons in London. He died, an old man, in 1566, and had seen much service in the wars of Henry VIII. William Clowes (1540-1604), my great predecessor at St. Bartholomew’s Hospital, learnt much of him. Clowes handed on the tradition to John Woodall (1556-1643), and Woodall to Richard Wiseman (1622-1676), the surgeon of the Commonwealth. Wiseman was succeeded by Samuel Sharp (1700 (?) - 1778) of Guy’s Hospital, and by Percivall Pott (1714-1788) at St. Bartholomew’s. The distinguishing mark of each was the possession of the qualities which make an English gentleman as well as a fine surgeon. They were all men of good education, wide experience, and sound judgment. John Arderne possessed these qualities in abundance. He preferred personal experience to the teaching of the schools. He would rather learn by experiment than by authority, and with characteristic frankness he related his failures as well as his successes (p. 83). He was not in advance of his time, for he believed, like every one else, in Astrology (p. 16). He kept his methods as secret as he could by giving fancy names to his ointments and plaisters (p. 89), and by writing his charm in Greek letters “ne a laicis perspicietur” (p. 103).
John Arderne wrote on Fistula, on diseases of the Eye, on Clysters, on Bleeding; on Plants and their Uses, and he also published a common-place book containing various receipts and notes of cases arranged without any method. There exists also his Commentary on Giles de Corbeil's metrical treatise "de Urinis" (p. xiii, note 1), and he is the author of a "Scala Sanitatis contra plagas." By some means he had access to a large medical library, for he quotes the very words of the manuscripts to which he refers in his treatise on Hæmorrhoids (p. 55, line 3), and it is evident that they were lying before him as he wrote. It is clear from the number of manuscripts which still remain in the various libraries (Bibliography, pp. xxxiv and xxxv) that Arderne's works were read and valued by his contemporaries and immediate successors. They were written originally in Latin, and, as he is careful to explain, with his own hand, but English translations were soon produced. The Latin is of the colloquial type like that in which the "Epistolae Obscurorum Virorum" was written in the early years of the sixteenth century, neither better nor worse, and when Arderne was at fault for a Latin word he never scrupled to use its English or French equivalent. His handwriting was as crabbed as his style, if, as there is some reason for believing, the Sloane MS., No. 75, is a holograph in so far as it deals with diseases of the eyes. The treatise on Fistula in Ano is certainly the most interesting and practical of Arderne's works. John Read published an abstract of a part of this treatise in the reign of Queen Elizabeth, but it has never been printed in full until now, and for this purpose an early fifteenth-century translation has been selected.

**The Treatment of Fistula in Ano.**

Arderne's attention was no doubt called to the subject of Fistula by the actual cases which came to him for relief. The hardship of the Hundred Years' War must have produced many cases of ischio-rectal abscess which ended in fistula. Wet, cold, long hours in the saddle weighted down by the heavy armour of the time, would readily lead to this condition in the knightly class; whilst the sedentary habits and gross feeding causing chronic constipation would account for it in the religious and civic population. Tubercle, too, was rife in the fourteenth century, but it would be interesting to learn whether the Black Death left an aftermath of boils and abscesses. The work is full of detail, and shows the author to be original, thoughtful, observant, and a master of his art both in theory and practice. He ARDERNE.
says, very rightly, that the treatment of fistula in ano had fallen into disrepute because it was a troublesome condition which brought very little credit to surgeons, whilst it required long and patient treatment for which the majority of the sufferers were not prepared to pay. An examination of the writings of the immediate predecessors and contemporaries of John Arderne shows that these statements are literally correct. To go back no farther than Albucasis, who died in 1013, it was taught that complete fistulae were incurable, and that all operations and the application of ointments was but labour in vain. Some believed that a cure could be obtained occasionally, and Albucasis advised, therefore, that a small copper or iron probe should be introduced into the bowel through the fistula which should then be laid open in its whole extent until the probe fell out. But if the bleeding were so severe as to stop the operation, or the surgeon was afraid of the haemorrhage, the actual cautery might be used. In other cases, Albucasis taught, a probe armed with a ligature of five strands might be passed from the external orifice of the fistula through its track into the rectum. The end of the probe was then caught by the finger and drawn out through the anus bringing with it one end of the ligature. The two ends of the ligature, the one hanging out of the fistula and the other from the anus, were then tied tightly together, care being taken to include as much tissue as possible. The knot was tightened on the second or third day, and as often afterwards as was necessary. The fistula was thus cured by the ligature cutting its way out, the track behind it healing by granulation.

William de Salicet (fl. 1245), who taught surgery at Bologna, and was considered the most skilful surgeon of his age, had so great a dread of fistula that he wrote: "When the fistula is complete it is assuredly so difficult to cure that it is better and more honourable for the surgeon to give up the case at once. But if he decide to undertake it the orifice should be dilated with a sponge tent and the whole track burnt with the actual cautery. If this fails the fistula may be laid open into the bowel by a seton of silk, horsehair or cow's hair pulled to and fro daily like a saw until it cuts its way out; but," he adds, as a warning, "I have seen bad results from this method of cure."

Lanfrank, the most distinguished pupil of William de Salicet, who

died in 1306, the year before John Arderne was born, contents himself with saying that fistulae are incurable, and he utters a lamentable cry against those who would attempt to operate even if it were only by applying a corrosive.¹

Henri de Mondeville (1260(?)–1320(?)) merely enlarged the orifice of the fistula with a tent, and utterly condemns the teaching of the school of Salernum, as represented by Roger and Roland, who would operate and afterwards apply a painful corrosive,²—and de Mondeville was in Paris what Arderne was in London, a first-rate surgeon.

Guy de Chauliac (d. 1368), prince of the mediaeval writers of surgical text-books, published his "Great Surgery" thirteen years before Arderne wrote his treatise on Fistula. After the manner of text-books various operations are described for the cure of fistula, each with insufficient details, and the reader is left in doubt as to which, if any, is to be employed.³

**Arderne's Operation for Fistula.**

John Arderne's operation is clearly a modification of the method recommended by Albucasis, and, like a good surgeon, he preferred a clean incision to fretting the fistula through with a ligature tied tightly. He recommends that the patient should be secured in the lithotomy position. A probe—called appropriately enough, sequere me—is passed through the fistula until it is felt in the rectum. The eye of the probe is then threaded with a ligature of four strands—the fraenum Cæsar—is which is drawn through the fistula as the probe is pulled out of the rectum until one end hangs out of the anus and the other from the opening of the fistula. These two ends are knotted together and the whole ligature is tightened by means of a peg—the wrayste—fixed into the widest part of a gorget—the tendiculum—in the same way that a violin peg tightens the strings passing round it. The use of the ligature is partly to control the bleeding and partly to maintain a correct line while the fistula is being divided. The gorget or tendiculum is pushed well up into the fistula and a grooved director with a curved end—the acus rostrata, or snowted needle—is passed along it until the end projects into the rectum where the probe had

been previously inserted. A shield—the cochlearia, or spoon—with a depression in its centre is then passed through the anus until the grooved director engages in the depressed notch. The object of this shield is partly to prevent the surgeon cutting down upon his own finger and partly to protect the opposite wall of the rectum should the patient struggle or make a sudden movement at the moment the fistula is divided. A scalpel—the razor or lance—is passed along the groove in the acus rostrata, and the fistula is cleanly divided along its whole length by drawing the knife, the acus rostrata, and the spoon out of the rectum with a single movement, the ligature or frenum Caesaris coming away at the same time. Each branch of the fistula may be laid open in turn if the patient can bear it, or any farther operation can be postponed, as Arderne had found by experience that when the main track was laid open the other channels often healed of themselves.

The operation was a good one, except that his instruments were needlessly cumbersome, and would cure a fistula equally well at the present day, but the great advance which Arderne made was in avoiding the corrosive and irritating after-treatment used by every one else. It is difficult now to put ourselves in his position and to realize what an amount of originality it meant for a surgeon in the fourteenth century to leave a wound alone and not to try and kill it with the actual cauterity or with caustics. Such a method was contrary to all teaching, and would seem to be undertaken with the very greatest risk. Yet John Arderne only applied a little oil of roses with the white or yolk of an egg, and he washed the wound with tepid water and a sponge. He never changed the dressings oftener than he could help (p. 87), but he was careful to see that they were not soiled, whilst his experience with simple enemata led him to prefer a clyster of salt and water to the powerful purgatives in ordinary use. Some of his patients recovered, therefore, and he was not slow to advertise the fact; but the weight of authority was against him, and in spite of his success, surgeons preferred to mundify their wounds and use incarnatives for nearly five hundred years after his death.

The Master Surgeons.

The position which Arderne occupied was perfectly well recognized both in England and France, and was identical with that which we occupy at the present time as consulting and operating surgeons. In France such surgeons were known in Arderne’s time as surgeons of the
long robe, to distinguish them from the barbers practising surgery, who were surgeons of the short robe. In England the prefix of Master indicated the difference, and John Arderne is careful therefore always to style himself Magister Johannes de Arderne, Magister being his title as Master of Surgery, which distinguished him, on the one hand, from the Doctor of Physic who was his superior, and, on the other, from the Barber and the Apothecary who ranked below him. The Master Surgeons formed a small guild in London from very early times, and records of persons entrusted with its supervision are known as early as 1369. Arderne calls himself "eirurgorum minimus" (p. x, note 6), and he was probably admitted a member of this guild when he came to London in 1370, in which case Master John Dunheved, Master John Hyndstoke and Master Nicholas Kildesby would be three of his colleagues. The guild never contained many members, but what it lacked in numbers it made up in influence, and, in spite of many struggles with the more numerous Guild of Barbers, it was able to hold its own for many years. The Guild of Surgeons united for a short time with the Physicians about 1423, and finally became merged into the United Company of Barbers and Surgeons in 1540. But it is unnecessary to trace the growth and development of the Guild of Surgeons, and those who are interested in it will find a fuller account in "The Medical Magazine" for 1899. The present treatise contains slight references to the struggle which was going on between the Surgeons and the Barbers at the time it was written. There is the case, for instance (p. 100), of the rich fishmonger who had a lacerated wound of the arm which was made worse by the incompetent treatment of a barber who had stuffed it with corrosive dressings. Arderne tore off the dressings and replaced them by a soothing fomentation which allowed the patient to have a good night's rest.

But the human interest of the treatises here published is concentrated in Arderne's description of the qualities required in a good surgeon (p. 4). It sets forth his ideal of the morals and etiquette of the highest class of surgeons—the Masters of Surgery—during the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, and shows that it was at least as high as it is amongst the best men of the present day. Pity, charity, continence in all things, the patient first but the fee not unimportant, because then as now the labourer was worthy of his hire, were the distinguishing characteristics of the educated surgeon.

Henri de Mondeville gives similar rules in somewhat greater detail.

I quote partly from Prof. E. Nicaise’s splendid edition of his works,¹ and partly from the contemporary translation into French, published by Dr. A. Bos:² "A Surgeon ought to be fairly bold. He ought not to quarrel before the laity, and although he should operate wisely and prudently, he should never undertake any dangerous operation unless he is sure that it is the only way to avoid a greater danger. His limbs, and especially his hands, should be well-shaped with long, delicate and supple fingers which must not be tremulous. He ought to promise a cure to every patient, but he should tell the parents or the friends if there is any danger. He should refuse as far as possible all difficult cases, and he should never mix himself up with desperate ones. He may give advice to the poor for the love of God only, but the wealthy should be made to pay well. He should neither praise himself nor blame others, and he should not hate any of his colleagues. He ought to sympathise with his patients in their distress and fall in with their lawful requests so far as they do not interfere with the treatment. Patients, on the other hand, should obey their surgeons implicitly in everything appertaining to their cure. The surgeon’s assistants must be loyal to their surgeon and friendly to his patients. They should not tell the patient what the surgeon said unless the news is pleasant, and they should always appear cheerful. They must agree amongst themselves as well as with the patients, and they must not be always grumbling, because this inspires fear and doubt in the patient."

De Mondeville then shows how an honest surgeon may be replaced and damaged by one who is less conscientious, for he says: "A rich man has the beginning of an inflammation. He calls in an upright surgeon, who says after examining him, ‘Seigneur, there is no need for any operation here, because nature will relieve herself, etc. ; but if the inflammation gets worse, send for me.’ It then happens that the patient calls in another man who is a quack, and he is told, ‘Seigneur, you have a great deal of inflammation, I can feel it inside, and if you are not treated at once you will certainly regret it.’ This surgeon then sets to work and makes an inflammation, which he afterwards cures, so that the whole proceeding redounds to his credit and profit, for he discovered an inflammation which did not exist, whilst the first surgeon is damaged both in his reputation and his pocket because he did not find out what was not there."

² "Soc. des Anciens Textes Français." Paris, 1897, tome i, p. 140.
"Then again, one of these second-rate surgeons will come to a sick man who is wealthy, and will say to him, with the voice of an arch-angel—taking care that no witnesses are present—'Seigneur, you must remember that you are the one who is ill and in pain. It is not your son or your nephew. It is you who are kept awake by the pain whilst your friends and servants sleep. Others won't take care of you if you don't take care of yourself. You are rich enough to get advice and to buy health and whatever else you want if you choose to do so. Riches are not more than health, nor is poverty worse than sickness. Have you not made the greater part of your money yourself and for yourself, so that if you are not a miser you can apply it to relieve your wants? Would to God that those who look after you so badly had your complaint. But all this is between ourselves, and what I tell you is only out of pity for you and for your good.' Then, in the absence of the patient, he speaks to the relatives and says, 'Seigneurs, this man has the greatest confidence in you, and, truly, if you lose him, you will lose an excellent friend. It is not to your credit either to let him go without advice, for if he died without advice you would be blamed everlastingly, even if it made him as poor as Job. He is really in great danger, and it is a serious case, but nature sometimes does better than we have any right to expect. He is sure to die if no one treats him, but if he is properly treated it is just possible that he will escape and not die. If he dies it won't be the result of the treatment, because he is nearly dead already, his only chance is to have a consultation, etc. I am speaking to you as a friend and not as a doctor.'

"But it is quite another matter when this same surgeon has to treat a poor man, for he says, 'I am really sorry for you, and I would gladly help you for the love of God only. But I am very busy just now with a lot of difficult cases, and, besides, the season is not a very favourable one for an operation. You can't afford to buy what is necessary for your case, such as drugs and dressings, so I would put it off until the summer. You will then be able to get the herbs and whatever else is wanted and so save expense. The summer, too, is the best time for the poor.' When the same pauper comes back in the summer the surgeon says to him, 'I am very sorry that I put you off in the winter and told you to wait until the summer, because the winter is really the best time. Summer is too hot and there is a fear of stirring up the disease. I should advise you to wait until the hot weather is over.' And this goes on everlastingly, for this kind of surgeon never finds time to operate upon a pauper."
De Mondeville classifies his patients according to their ability to pay fees. "The first class are paupers who must be treated for nothing; the second class are a little better off, and may send presents of fowls and ducks; they pay in kind. The third class are friends and relations who pay no fixed fee, but send victuals or presents in token of gratitude, but no money. Our assistants ought to suggest the presents to this class, saying behind our backs, and as if we knew nothing about it, when anything is said about money, 'No, indeed, the Master would not like it, and you would do much better to make him a little present, though I am sure that he does not expect anything.' Indeed, a sharp assistant sometimes makes more by such suggestions than the Master does by his operation, and it is just like doubling the fee on account of the horse when the Master makes his visits on horseback. Then there is a class embracing those who are notoriously bad payers, such as our nobility and their households, government officials, judges, baillies and lawyers, whom we are obliged to treat because we dare not offend them. In fact, the longer we treat these people the more we lose. It is best to cure them as quickly as possible, and to give them the best medicines. Lastly, there is a class who pay in full and in advance, and they should be prevented from getting ill at all, because we are paid a salary to keep them in health.'

The difficulty of obtaining payment for operations in the fourteenth century must have been very great, for De Mondeville still further emphasizes it and says, "The chief object of the patient, and the one idea which dominates all his actions, is to get cured, and when once he is cured he forgets his own obligation and omits to pay; the object of the surgeon, on the other hand, is to obtain his money, and he should never be satisfied with a promise or a pledge, but he should either have the money in advance or take a bond for it. As the poet says, 'Sæpe fides data fallit, plegius plaidit, vadium valet—The promise is often broken, the security is worthless, the bond alone holds good.'" De Mondeville also thinks that it is better on the whole for the surgeon to be paid for what he does rather than by a retaining fee, because a salary is apt to make him so hopeful that he will think the blind can certainly see and the lame can walk or even run. The surgeon too must beware of those who will make infamous proposals to him, because from time immemorial it has been an article of faith with the common people that every surgeon is a thief, a murderer or a swindler. He should also be careful to estimate the strength of a patient before he operates. If a patient dies of the operation and not of mere weakness the surgeon is held excused so long as the friends
think the wound looks healthy, but if the wound looks badly the surgeon is credited with the death even though the patient has simply died of weakness. The surgeon must not put too much faith in appearances. The rich have a nasty habit of coming to him in old clothes, or, if they are properly dressed as befits their station they invent all kinds of excuses for beating down his fees. They say Charity is a flower when they find a man who helps the poor, and think that a surgeon ought to assist the unfortunate, but they never consider that a like rule is binding upon them. "I often say to such folk," De Mondeville adds, "Well, then, pay me for yourself and for three paupers and I will cure them as well as you. But they never make any answer, and I have never yet found any one in any position, whether he was a cleric or a layman, who was rich enough, or rather honest enough, to pay what he had promised until he was made to do so." Lesser surgeons must have fared very badly if this was the experience of the surgeon to the King of France.

De Mondeville returns to the question of fees in another part of his book (Nicaise, op. cit. p. 199). "The surgeon ought to consider three things when a patient comes to see him and arrange about the fee for an operation. First, his own position; secondly, the condition of the patient; thirdly, the state of the disease. As regards himself the surgeon should think whether he is celebrated or at least better known than his colleagues, whether he is the only surgeon in the country, whether he is rich and not obliged to practise, whether he has enough cases to fill up his time, and whether he is on the point of undertaking more important cases. On the second point, viz. the condition of the patient. He either knows or he does not know him; if he knows him he is aware whether he is rich or poor, whether, for example, he is the nephew of a bishop or of an abbé. But if he does not know him he ought to make careful inquiries, or rather he ought to get his assistants to make them, because sometimes, indeed often, it happens that the rich come to the leech dressed like paupers. If the surgeon suspects this he should say to his patient, 'Seigneur, I have examined your case but I must think it over, and I should like to see you again when I have done so, because he who judges in haste repents at leisure,' and in the interval the surgeon should make inquiries. As to the third point, the surgeon should think of the disease whether it is serious, if it is difficult to cure, and if long attendance will be required, whether few people know how to treat it, if it is chronic, and if it presents any unusual characters.

"When the surgeon has considered all the points under these three
headings he ought to charge the patient boldly a very large fee, though he may moderate it according to circumstances. To a rich man he should say, 'The fee a surgeon ought to receive is a hundred pounds for this operation,' and if the patient is staggered by the sum he would continue, 'but I did not say that I was going to charge you that amount,' and thus little by little he lowers his fee. But he should always have a minimum for each operation and never go below it. In such cases it is more graceful for him to say, 'I am ready to do this operation as you and your friends wish, but I would rather do it for nothing to please you than for so small a fee.' And the surgeon should pretend that he has no living (prebende) nor capital except his profession, and that everything is as dear as possible, especially drugs, and ointment; that the fee is as nothing compared with his services; and the wages of all other artisans, masons, for example, have doubled of late. I repeat that the surgeon ought to charge the rich as much as possible and to get all he can out of them, provided that he does all he can to cure the poor. You then, Surgeons, if you operate conscientiously upon the rich for a sufficient fee and upon the poor for charity, you ought not to fear the ravages of fire, nor of rain nor of wind; you need not take orders or make pilgrimages nor undertake any work of that kind, because by your science you can save your souls alive, live without poverty and die in your houses. Live in peace and joy and rejoice because your recompense is so great in heaven, as necessarily follows from the words of the Saviour, spoken in the psalm by the mouth of His prophet, 'Beatus qui intelligit super egeneum et pauperem. . .' For this reason surgeons enjoy such immunities and are free from all personal service and from all common burdens, such as the repair of walls, moats and roads, from the night watch in towns, and from all kinds of things. The Surgeons are classed as Surgeon-major and as Surgeons of the palace or Examiners, who are generally called Archiatres by the common people."

William of Salicet, another surgeon, experienced in war and of the same high standard as Arderne and De Mondeville, had written in 1275 ("Chirurgie de Guillaume de Salicet Achevée en 1275, Traduction et Commentaire, par Paul Pifteau." Toulouse, 1898, p. 3) in somewhat similar terms. He says a surgeon should grant the wishes of his patient so long as they do not interfere with the operation. He ought also to comfort his patient as far as possible by kind actions and by soothing words. He should hold out hope even in the most desperate cases, because the patient's courage reacts to these words and promises,
and they may have a more powerful influence on his recovery than any of the surgeon's remedies. But the matter should be discussed with the friends whenever there is danger, partly to save them the shock of an unexpected death, and partly to protect the surgeon from any suspicion of having caused it. Neither a surgeon nor a physician should talk to the women of the house with closed doors, whether she be mistress or servant. He should never speak improperly to her, nor make eyes at her, especially in the presence of the patient. Such actions may cause a patient to lose confidence in his surgeon, and thus the operation may prove unsuccessful because the patient has lost the good opinion he had of the operator. A wise surgeon too will do well to refrain from stealing anything whilst he is in attendance; he will not stir up strife amongst the patient's friends or quarrel with the people of the house; he will be careful, too, not to employ notoriously bad characters as his assistants, for all these things may spoil a good operation and thus detract from the dignity of medicine. Above all things, he must refrain from becoming too familiar with the laity. They are always ready to speak ill of doctors, and too great familiarity merely means that one cannot demand the proper fees for an operation with any assurance and safety. It is well known that a large fee increases the authority of the doctor as well as the confidence the patient puts in him, even though the doctor is very ignorant, because it is thought that a large fee secures better attention. The surgeon ought to observe the rules of those with whom he is living or amongst whom he finds himself. He should visit the poor because it is a good thing to have a reputation for Charity, partly because it increases his estimation in the eyes of the people, and partly because it enables the Divine Power to extend its influence over his spirit. The surgeon ought not to allow himself to be swayed by the entreaties of the patient, because if he yields the patient will lose faith in the operator, and the operator may himself become timid and hesitating. The assistants ought to be amiable and helpful to the patient, and they should never repeat to him what the surgeon has said unless it is pleasant and encouraging. Leeches should be especially careful not to discuss matters with the patient or in his presence, and above all things, they must avoid whispering or talking together in corners, for such actions rouse all kinds of suspicion in the mind of the patient and his friends.

Lanfrank, who was in Paris in 1295, and is looked upon as the founder of French surgery, says in the English version transcribed in
1380 (Early English Text Society, No. 102, 1894, p. 8): "Needful it is that a surgeon be of a complexion well proportioned. . . He must have hands well shaped, long small fingers, and his body not quaking. Also he must be of subtle wit, for all things that (be)longeth to surgery may not with letters be written. . . Be he no glutton, nor not envious nor a niggard; be he true; humble and pleasingly bear himself to his patients; speak he no ribaldry in the sick man's house; give he no counsel but if he be asked; nor speak he with no woman in folly in the man's house; nor chide he not with the sick man nor none of his household, but courteously speak to the sick man, and in all manner of sickness promise him health although you despair of him, but nevertheless tell his friends the truth. Love no hard cures and undertake no desperate cases. Help poor men as far as possible and ask good reward of the rich. Praise he not himself with his own mouth, nor blame he over sharply other leeches. Love he all leeches and clerics, and, as far as possible, make he no leech his enemy. So clothe he himself with virtue that he may obtain a good name and a fair reputation. This is the ethical teaching."

It is clear from these extracts that Arderne had read Lanfrank's rules for a surgeon, and that he amplified them from his own experience, which corresponded very much with that of the French surgeons who were his contemporaries. But Arderne's teaching of the duties of a surgeon compares very favourably with that of William Salicet or Henri de Mondeville. He had a higher moral tone, or, at any rate, he based his warnings on morality rather than upon self-interest, and there is nowhere any reference to a surgeon as a common thief. His fees are high, but, as a contemporary writer explains, this is to make up for the long periods when he had nothing to do, and it is clear that it was extremely difficult to obtain money from patients.

Every surgeon was taught never to treat cases which appeared incurable or were unlikely to run a straightforward course. This was due to ignorance, to the weakness of the law, and to the arbitrary treatment to which individuals might be exposed. Throughout the Middle Ages, and long afterwards, there was no science of toxicology and very little knowledge of morbid anatomy. Persons who died suddenly, therefore, were usually thought to have been killed by poison, and the histories of the present day are full of accounts of the deaths of great men who are said to have been poisoned, when it is clear to every medical reader that they died a natural death from some acute disease. A perforated gastric ulcer, a perforated duodenal ulcer, an acute gan-
grenous inflammation of the vermiform appendix would present all the characters of poisoning to the lay mind. Failure after an operation was liable to be followed by the most undesirable consequences to the leech. King John of Bohemia, from whose body Edward the Black Prince took an ostrich feather for his crest, sewed up his French leech in a sack and threw him into the Oder because he had not cured his cataract as he had promised.

Arderne must have led an interesting and adventurous life, and his treatises contain many sidelights on contemporary events. He appears to be the only contemporary authority for the story of the means by which Edward the Black Prince obtained the ostrich feather which has since become the cognisance of the heir apparent to the English throne. The passage runs as follows, "We are not able to cure rhagades unless the remedy can be put through the anus either as a clyster or by means of a suppository, since remedies applied outside are either useless or do very little good. We ought, therefore, to work with stimulating applications until the wound is clean, and afterwards with applications which both heal and dry, as has been said already in the chapter on internal piles, to wit, where Nastar is painted—and Nastar is a kind of clyster or enema known as a glister-pipe.—The feather of the Prince of Wales is also shown there, viz. on the preceding page. And note that Edward the eldest son of Edward King of England bore a similar feather above his crest, and he obtained the feather from the King of Bohemia, whom he killed at Cressy in France. And so he took the feather which is called an 'ostrich feather,' which that most noble Lord King had used hitherto to bear above his crest. And in that year when our Lord the strenuous and warlike Prince departed to God, I wrote this little book of mine with my own hand, viz. in the year one thousand three hundred and seventy-six. And our Lord Edward the Prince died on the sixth June on Trinity Sunday at Westminster during the great Parliament, and may God assol in him, for he was the very flower of chivalry, without peer in the world." 1

1 "Rhagades curare non possimus nisi medicinis infra annum inferamus ant in clystere aut modo suppositorii quia medicinae exterius apposite parum vel nihil prosum, unde primo oportet cum corrosivis operare ad mundificationem et postea cum consolidantibus et desiccantibus ut predictum est capitolo de hemorrhoid. infra annum latentibus ubi nastare depingitur et penna Principis Walliae, viz. folio precedente. Et nota quod talem pennam albam portabat Edwardus primogenitus filius Edwardi Regis Anglie super crestam suam. Et illam pennam conquisivit de rege Boemico, quem interfecit apud Cresse in Francia. Et sic assumptit sibi illam pennam quae dicitur 'Ostrich fether,' quam prius Dominus Rex nobillissimus portebat super crestam suam et eodem anno quo
This passage is omitted from the English translation which is here printed (Sloane 6), as well as from the later and different English translation (Sloane 76), which are often merely abstracts of what Arderne wrote. But it is present in the Latin texts (Sloane MSS. 56, leaf 74; 335, leaf 68; 2002, leaf 333; 176, back; 29301, leaf 42, col. 157; in MS. 1153, leaf 41, in Trin. Coll. Camb.; and in the MS. No. 339 in the Hunterian Library at Glasgow, leaf 77).

It was from the last MS., which was then called Sloane 2, that Thomas Hearn copied it in the "Chronici Walteri Hemingford." 1 In each case it is a part of the text, and is written by the same hand as the rest of the manuscript. The scribes have not copied from each other, and there is very little doubt in my own mind that Arderne wrote it originally, and that it contains the story current in his day about the source of the feather, and Arderne was in a position to obtain the story at first hand. Incidentally it bears out an interesting point, for it says that both the King of Bohemia and the Prince of Wales bore the feather above his crest, not as his crest, so that it was used in exactly the same manner as was the Garter at first, viz. as an ornament to be worn at jousts or tournaments. 2 It only became a crest in later years, and so long as it was a mere ornament or distinguishing badge there was no need for it to be associated with a motto; indeed, in each of Arderne's figures the scroll placed upon the quill of the feather, which is single, is left blank instead of being charged. This use of the ostrich feather as an ornament at jousts further explains the passage in the Black Prince's will, in which he desired that his corpse should be taken through the City of Canterbury as far as the Priory, and that "two war horses, covered with our Arms and two men armed in our Arms and in our crests," should precede his corpse; that is to say, "the one for War, with our entire Arms quarterly, and the other for Peace, with our Badge of Ostrich Feathers," with four banners of the same suit. 3

Dominus strenuos et bellicosus Princeps migravit at Dominum, scripsi libellum istum manu propriâ, viz. anno Millesimo ccclxxvi. Et Dominus Edwardus princeps obiit vi Idus Junii, viz. die Sanctae Trinitatis, apud Westmonasterium in magno parlamento, quem Deus absolvat, quia fuit flos Milicis Mundi sine pare. Nastare species est clysteris sive enematis "a glister pipe."

1 Vol. 2, pp. 444, 446, in note.

"Et volons que a quelle heure ce notre corps soit amenez parmy la ville de Cantirbirie tantqua la priorie, q'deux destre3 covert3 de nos arme3, et deu3 home3
The directions for making Nerbone plaister (p. 91) show the difficulties in reckoning small subdivisions of time. Arderne directs that the melted diachylyon should be allowed to stand without moving by the space of a "pater noster" and an "ave maria." I asked a patient recently, the Mother Superior of a Convent, how long it would take to repeat these prayers, and she replied about three quarters of a minute. When I next saw her, after she had spent a sleepless night with a clock in front of her, she said that the question had interested her, and she found that a pater and an ave took exactly half a minute. Dr. Norman Moore draws attention ("The Progress of Medicine at St. Bartholomew's Hospital," 1888, p. 13) to a similar method employed by John Mirfeld, a Canon of the priory of St. Bartholomew, who wrote a general treatise on medicine—Breviarium Bartholomei—about the year 1380. He says, "Mirfeld treated chronic rheumatism by rubbing the part with olive oil. This was to be prepared with ceremony. It was to be put into a clean vessel while the preparer made the sign of the cross and said the Lord's Prayer and an Ave Maria, and when the vessel was put to the fire the Psalm, 'Why do the heathen rage,' was to be said as far as the verse 'Desire of me, and I shall give thee the heathen for thine inheritance.' The Gloria, Pater Noster, and Ave Maria are to be said, and the whole gone through seven times. 'Which done let that oil be kept.' . . . "The time occupied I have tried," says Dr. Norman Moore, "and found to be a quarter of an hour."

The charm against Cramp (p. 102) was obtained from one who was at Milan when Lionel, Duke of Clarence, married Violante, the daughter of Galeazzo Visconti, at the door of the Cathedral, on June 5th, 1368. Five months of continuous jousts, feasts and revels were followed by the inevitable consequences of delirium tremens and epileptiform convulsions.

The sober testimony to the profligacy of the times given in the receipt for making confection of Sanguis Veneris (p. 89) is the natural outcome of the conditions described in Dr. Furnivall's "Early English Meals and Manners" (Early English Text Society, Original Series, No. 32). The boys and girls of the upper classes were transferred...

arne\3 en nos arme\3 et en nos heaumes voisent devant dit n're corps, c'est assavoir l'un pur la guerre de nos arme\3 entiers quartelle\3, at l'autre pur la paix de nos bages des plumes d'ostrace, ove quarter baneres de mesme la sute, et qe chacun de ceux d'porteront les dite\3 baneres ait sur sa teste un chapeau de nos armes." "Nichols's Royal Wills," p. 68. See also "Notes and Queries," Series ii, 1861, vol. xi, pp. 224 and 294.
from their own homes to be educated in the houses of the nobility as pages and maids of honour. They were well fed, spent their lives in a round of pleasure, and were often badly looked after.

The account of juniper shows that Arderne knew London and its neighbourhood and talked with the countryfolk as he went amongst them. He says, “Juniper grows in Kent upon Shooter's Hill on the road to Canterbury, at Dorking also in Surrey as well as in many other places in that County, at Bedington too near Croydon, and the inhabitants of that country call it gorst because they do not know its proper name.”¹ The Black Death does not seem to have left much impression upon Arderne's mind, because, like most contemporary medical writers, he only mentions it incidentally, and what we look upon as an appalling visitation had already faded from his mind, and its impression had been replaced by more recent epidemics.

Arderne lived through the most chivalrous period of English history, and in all probability he knew personally many of the peerless knights and splendid champions who survive for ever in the pages of Froissart. To have known such men was in itself an education, and to have lived in the household of Henry, Duke of Lancaster, and of John of Gaunt was sufficient to make Arderne the best type of an English surgeon—a scholar and a gentleman. The chivalry of the age is well brought out in the extant manuscripts of Arderne's treatises. In some cases he mentions the names of the patients, but in many instances he tricks their coat-armour instead of giving names, and thus some early shields are preserved, amongst others that of the great Douglas.

Arderne left a few traces on the sands of time, but very few. Johannis Argentin, a physician at Cambridge, wrote a treatise, which still remains in the Bodleian Library as Ashmol. MS. No. 1437. Tanner² thinks that it was written about 1476. He mentions Arderne no less than eleven times, and copies his style, especially his manner of quoting cases in illustration of his various subjects.

Arderne's fame as a pharmacist long outlasted his reputation as a surgeon. Tapsimel (p. 31), Pulvis sine pari (pp. 26 and 86), Tapsimel, valencia (p. 69), and the valences of Scabious and Wormwood (p. 97),

¹ “Et crescat in canicia super Scheteres hylde in viá versus cantuariam, apud Dorkyng, eciam in Soferay et eciam in aliis pluribus illius provincie, crescit eciam apud Bedyngtong nuxta Croyden quam incoele patrie illius vacant gorst, quia proprium nomen illius ignorant.” (MS. Digby 161, leaf 23, in the Bodleian Library, Oxford.)
remained until the time of the first Pharmacopoeia, 1618. Dr. Alleyne¹ speaks thus of them:

"Powers of Scabious, Valentia Scabiosa.—Take of the juice of green Scabious, pressed out and strained through a cloth, and of Hog's lard cleared of its membranes, each as much as you please. Let the Lard be beat in a stone mortar, and the juice poured in by little at a time, for the convenience of mixture, and giving its tincture; and then put them together into a proper vessel, to be exposed to the sun, and so that the juice may cover the lard; after nine days put them again into the mortar as before, and throw away that thin and discoloured humidity, which separates upon beating, without rubbing them together; and again put into its vessel for five days. And afterwards beat it again and by little at a time, mix with it fresh juice of scabious, and after a fresh insolation of fifteen days in its proper vessel in the Sun, let it be cleared as before of its watery humidity. Let it then stand again in the same manner for fifteen days longer with fresh juice, and after a little beating let it be kept for use in a glass or earthen vessel. This, we are told by the first compilers of the College Dispensatory, was the contrivance of John Arden, an experienced surgeon at Newark in Nottinghamshire, who lived in the reign of Edward III. After insertion of this, which they had from an ancient manuscript, they particularly direct to repeat the processes with fresh juice till the Lard looks of a deep green; and that is made the measure of the repetition necessary. The powers and honey of Mullein were from the same author, and almost three hundred years ago were in great esteem amongst the surgeons of our own country, though they have now been long in disuse."

"The Powers of Mullein; Tansy Valentia.—Take of the juice of Mullen and of Hog's lard, each as much as you please; let the Lard be cleansed of its membranes and fibres; and broke into small parcels; then beat it with the expressed juice, press out and strain as directed in the preceding process. Let it afterwards be put into a proper vessel for nine or ten days, and then be twice more impregnated with fresh juice until it is quite green. Lastly, after all the humidity that will separate is poured off, beat it again briskly, and put it by in a proper manner for use."

The first contriver of these processes, as appears from the first edition of the College Dispensatory, directs the medicines thus made to be fresh beat once in a month.

"Honey of Mullen; Tapsimel.—Take of the juice of Celandine and one part Mullen, of despumated Honey two parts; boil gradually till the juices are evaporated, adding thereto, if the Operator pleases, calcined Vitriol and Alum with Copperas, and again boil secundum artem."

The first College Dispensatory adds from the Author, that "if occasion requires this should be at last boiled up to a pretty thick consistence; and says that it will certainly cure itchings in any part of the body, and is a most noble ointment. But it seems the present Practice hath not faith enough to rely upon it for anything, for neither this nor the foregoing are ever prescribed or made. However, it hath been thought fit to continue such extraordinary discoveries still upon record for the sake of any that may think proper to make trial with them."

It is my pleasant duty, in conclusion, to thank those who have given me much help in the preparation of this volume. First, to Dr. Warner, the Keeper of Manuscripts, who allowed me to study the Sloane MSS. at the British Museum in comfort in the room which is doing duty as the large room; secondly, to Mr. L. Galbraith, who afforded me similar facilities in the University Library at Glasgow; and, lastly, to Mr. Falconer Madan, who made me feel at home in the Bodleian. Lieut.-Col. Walter D. McCaw, Surgeon of the United States Army, responded kindly, promptly and fully to my questions about the only manuscript of Arderne which Dr. Harvey Cushing of Baltimore has been able to obtain tidings of in America. Miss Evaline G. Parker at Oxford, and Miss Margaret E. Thompson in London, have helped me by transcribing obscure passages which I was quite unable to decipher; whilst my friend, Mr. J. H. Noble, has assisted me with the heraldry of the various MSS., a subject of much interest, which I hope some day to consider in greater detail. My obligations to Mr. S. Armitage-Smith are great; and I have endeavoured to show my appreciation of the interest which Dr. Frank Payne has always taken in Arderne, and the help I have received by dedicating to him this edition of his treatises. I have tried to make the text literally accurate, and to elucidate it by such notes as were needed to explain to myself the various difficulties which occurred in reading it. No one can be more conscious of the defects in the notes than myself, but the work has been a labour of love, and if they
seem extremely bad it must be remembered that, after all, I am but a surgeon, whose business in life is to act and not to write.

BIBLIOGRAPHY.

The following table shows the manuscripts which I have examined personally at the British Museum, and in Oxford, Cambridge and Glasgow. There is said to be a French version in Paris and a Latin one at Stockholm, but I have not yet been able to obtain any information about them: there is a manuscript in Washington and another in Dublin.

Arderne issued his writings in the form of treatises, written in Latin, and with his own hand. These treatises were afterwards collected and were sometimes translated. The manuscripts therefore contain different combinations. The collection here printed is one of the more usual groups, but the translator has not rendered the whole of the last part on the preparation of various remedies. It is given in greater detail in the Ashmole MS. 1434 in the Bodleian Library.
MANUSCRIPTS OF JOHN OF ARDERNE IN THE VARIOUS LIBRARIES.

I. Practica de Fistula in Ano, &c.


" " No. 3844, ff. 2-16 b.

" " No. 3548, ff. 65-88.

" " University Library, Glasgow, No. 339.


" " " No. 76, ff. 143 and 144. [English].

" " " No. 238, ff. 99-214.

" " " No. 277, ff. 60 b.-75 b. [English].

" " " No. 347, ff. 122-240.

" " " No. 563, ff. 63-121 b. [English].

" " " No. 795, ff. 96 b.-163 b.


" " " No. 2122, ff. 10-32.

" " " No. 29301, ff. 22-32 b.

" " " No. 8093, ff. 140-174 [English].

" " Harleian MSS. No. 3371, ff. 13-39 b.

" " No. 5401, ff. 34 b.-52.

" " University Library, Glasgow, No. 251, formerly Sloane 2.


" " St. John's College, Oxford, No. 132, ff. 68.

" " Emmanuel Coll., Cambridge, No. 69.

" " Royal College of Surgeons, Ireland.


" " University Library, Glasgow, No. 135.

" " No. 403.


II. Liber Medicinarum sive Receptorum Liber Medicinalium.


" " " No. 335, ff. 1-78 b.

" " " No. 341, ff. 1-40 b.

" " " No. 3548, ff. 26-99.

" " Bodley's Library, Oxford, Digby 161, ff. 16-23 b.

" " St. John's College, Oxford, No. 86, ff. 53.

" " University Library, Glasgow, No. 339, ff. 232.

" " Royal College of Surgeons, Ireland. 1 date.
Manuscripts of John of Arderne in the various Libraries. xxxv

Sæc. xiv-xv. University Library, Glasgow, No. 112.


Sæc. xv. " No. 347, ff. 2-75.

Sæc. xv. " No. 795, ff. 20 b.-96 b.


Sæc. xv. " No. 29301, ff. 3-22, and 32 b.-47 b.


Sæc. xv. " University Library, Glasgow, No. 251.


Sæc. xv. " Emmanuel Coll., Cambridge, No. 69 [English].


Sæc. xvi. " University Library, Glasgow, No. 403.


Sæc. xvii. " No. 2271 [English].


III. Commentary “De Judiciis Urinarum.”

Sæc. xiv. University Library, Glasgow, No. 328 [English].

IV. Hoc est Speculum Phlebotomiae.


Sæc. xiv-xv. University Library, Glasgow, No. 112.


V. Scala Sanitatis.

A tretis extracte of Maistre Iohn Arden of fistula in ano and of fistula in oper place; of pe body and of aposteme; makyng fistule; and of emoraide; & tenasmon and of clistere: of certayn oytentemente; poudre; & oyles.

**Fistula in ano.**
1. Of pe ploge of fistula in ano & of the manere of pe leche & of instrumentis necessary for pe fistle. [p. 1]
2. Of aposteme in pe lure causyng be fistul & of pe cure of jam. [p. 11]
3. Of disfinicion of a fistule and place; pat it is bred in & when it is curable or nouȝt. [p. 20]
4. Of a maner of wirchyng in fistul in ano & pe curyng þerof. [p. 21]
5. Of anþer maner wirchyng in þe same fistule and pe cure wiþ diuere exemple. [p. 28]
6. Of bubo wiþin þe lure & þe impossibilitie or myche hardnes of þe cure of it. [p. 37]

**Fistula in the limbs.**
7. Of fistule in þe fyngers & hardness of cure of it. [p. 42]
8. Of fistule in þe lawe joyntour of þe fyngers & in þe legges, knees fete & ankles wiþ corruptyng of þe bones and þe hardnes of þe cure of it. [p. 46]
9. Of þe maner of cure of oon þat had þe fistule in þe legges aboue þe ankle. [p. 47]
10. Of þe maner of cure of ane aposteme in þe boȝt of þe knee þat was disposid to þe fistule. [p. 47]
11. Of þe maner of a ful hard cure in bolnyng of al a manneþ arme. [p. 49]
12. Of þe maner of a cure of a man þat was smytener on the schyn bone. [p. 51]
13. Of the maner of cure of a man whose legge was sodenly bolned. [p. 52]

**Of Mormales.**

**Of Piles.**
15. Of emoraides & of þe cure of þam[.] [p. 64]

**Of Tenesmus.**
16. Of þenasmon & rhagadeþ and of þe cure of þam. [p. 71]
Table of Contents.

Of Prolapse.
17. Of goyng out of þe lune & þe cure þere-of. [p. 74]

Of Clysters.
18. Of clistereȝ and þe maner of þam. [p. 74]

Of Powders.
19. Of þe properteȝ of Vitriol. [p. 79]
20. Of þe properteȝ of Alum. [p. 81]
21. Of þe properteȝ of Vertgreȝ. [p. 82]
22. Of þe properteȝ of arsenic & auripigment. [p. 82]
23. Of makyng of þem & of þe werchyng. [p. 85]
24. Of makyng of pulv. sine pari & of þe wirchyng. [p. 86]
25. Of makyng of sanguis veneris & of þe wirchyng. [p. 89]
26. Of makyng of salus populi & of þe werchyng. [p. 90]
27. Of makyng of nerbone & of þe werchyng. [p. 91]

Of Oils and Waters.
28. Of makyng of Olei Seriac. [p. 91]
29. Of makyng of Unguentum arabicum.
30. Of makyng of tapismel.
31. Of makyng of diaflosmus. [p. 92]
32. Of makyng of puluis grecus. [p. 92]
33. Of makyng of oyle of roses. [p. 92]
34. Of makyng of oyle of violetteȝ. [p. 93]
35. Of makyng of oyle of canamulle. [p. 94]
36. Of makyng of oyle of mastikk. [p. 95]
37. Of makyng of oyle of almanndeȝ. [p. 95]
38. Of makyng of water of almandeȝ. [p. 95]
39. Of makyng of oyle of juniper. [p. 96]
40. Of makyng of ane enoyntment of juniper. [p. 96]
41. Of makyng of a gode emplastre for þe goute. [p. 96]
42. Of the properte of walwort & makyng of þe juse & poudre of it. [p. 97]

Of Valences.
41. Of makyng of valence of seabious or mattefelon. [p. 97]
42. Of makyng of valence of wormode. [p. 98]
43. Of makyng a man slepe without pulvereȝ or pilleȝ or enoy[n]te-ment. [p. 100]
44. Of þe maner of wakyng of hym. [p. 101]
Of the ploge of fistula in ano, and of the manere of the leche, and of instrumentis necessary for the fistule.

4 [I, I]ohn Arderne fro the first pestilence that was in the 3ere of oure lord 1349 duellid in Newerk in Notyngham-shire vnto the 3ere of oure lord 1370, and ther I helid many men of fistula in ano. Of whiche the first was Sire Adam Eueryngham of laxton-in-the-clay byside Tukkesford; whiche Sire Adam, forsoth, was in Gascone with sir Henry, that tyme named Erle of derby and aftir was made duke of lancastre, a noble and 12 worthi lord. The forsaid sir Adam, forsoth, suffrand fistulam in ano, made for to aske counsel at all the leche and cirurgien; that he myȝt fynde in Gascone, at Burdeux, at Briggerac, Tolows, and Neyrbon, and Peyters, and many other places. And all forsoke hym for uncureable; whiche y-se and y-herde, þe forseid Adam hastied for to torne hom to his contre. And when he come home, he did of al his knyghtly clothinges and cladde 20 mornyng clothes, in purpose of abydyng dissoluyn, or lesyng, of his body beyng niȝt to hym. At last I, forseid Ioyn Arderne, y-sonȝt and couenant y-made, come to hym and did my cure to hym and, oure lord beyng mene, I helid hym perfectedly within half a 3ere; and aftirward, hole and sounde, he ledde a glad lif by 30 3ere and more, for whiche cure I gatte myche honour and louyng purȝ al ynglond. And the forseid duke of lancastre and many 28 othir gentileȝ wondred ther-of. Aftirward I cured hugon derlyng of fowick of Balne by Snaye. Aftirward I

Domino mediantem.

but lived in health and strength from about 1346 until 1377 after an operation.
cured Iohn Schefeld of Briktwell a-side Tekyll. Aftirward I cured sir Reynald Grey, lord of Wilton in Waleʒ and lord of Schirlond baside Chesterfelde, whiche asked counsel at the most famose leches of yngland, and none 4 availed hym. Aftirward I cured sir Henry Blakborne, clerk, Tresorer of the lord Prince of Waleʒ. Aftirward I cured Adam Oumfray of Shelforde baside Notyngham, and sir Iohn, prest of the same toune; and Iohn of 8 holle of Shirlande; and Sir Thomas hamelden, parsone of langare in the Vale of Beneare. Aftirward I curid frere Thomas Gunny, custode of the frere Mynours of 3orke. Aftirward, in the 3ere of oure lord 1370, I come to 12 london, and ther I cured Iohn Colyn, Mair of Northampton, that asked counsel at many lecheʒ. Aftirward I helid or cured Hew Denny, fistlemanger of london, in Briggestrete; and William Polle, and Raufe Double; 16 and oon that was called Thomas Broune, that had 15 holes by whiche went out wynde with egestious odour; that is to sey, 8 holeʒ of the to[ne] party of the erse, and 7 on the tothir side; Of whiche some holeʒ was 20 distant fro the towell by the space of the handbrede of a man, so that bothe his buttokis was so vclerat and putrefed with-in that the quitour and filthe went out ich day als mych as an egg-shel miʒt take. Aftirward *I 24 cured 4 frereʒ prechours, that is to sey ffrere Iohn Writell, ffrere Iohn haket, ffrere Petre Browne, ffrere Thomas Apperley, and a 30ng man called Thomas Voke. Of whiche forseid som had only on hol y-distaunte fro the 28 towel by oon ynche, or by two, or by thre. And other[s] had 4 or 5 holeʒ procedyng to the codde of the testicleʒ; And many other maners of whiche the tellyng war ful hard. All these forseid cured I afore the makynge of this 32 boke. Oure lord Ihesu y-blessid God knoweth that I lye not, and therfore no man dout of this, of-al old famous men and ful clere in studie have confesséd cham that thei fande nat the wey of curacion in this case. ffor god, 36 that is deler or rewarder of wisdom, hath hid many thingis fro wise men and slı3e whiche he vouchesaf aftirward for to shewe to symple men. Therfore al men pat ar to come aftirward witte thai that old maistreʒ war noʒt 40
bisie ne pertinacé in sekyng and serchynge of this forseid
cure. But for thai mist nost take the hardnes of it at the
first front, thei kest it ytterly byhinde pair bak. Of

4 whiche, forsoé, som demed it holy for to be incurable;
oper applied doubtful opinions. Therfore for-als-miche
in hard thingis it spedith to studiers for to perseuere and
abide, and for to turne subtily thair wittes. Sfor it is opned
8 not to pam that ar passand but to tham pat ar perseuer-
and.¹ Therfore to the honour of god almy3ti that hath
opened witte to me that I shuld fynde tresour hiddle in
the felde of studiers that long tyyme and [with] pantyng breest

12 I haue swette and travailed ful bisily and pertinacely in
diuandudis.² As my faculte sufficep without fair spekyng
of endityng, I haue brouzt fér to shew it openly to tham
that cometh aftrur, our lord beyng me[ne] and this boke.

16 No3t that I shewe myselfe more worthi of louyng of suche
a gifte than other, but that I greue not god, and for the
dragme that he hath giften to me that I be not constryened
for treson. Therfore I pray that the grace of the holy
gost be to this werke, that he vouch-saf for to spedde it;
that tho thingis whiche in wrokyng trewly I am ofte
tymes experte, I may plenerly explane tham in this litel
boke. And this I sey that I know no3t in al my tyrne,

24 ne hard not in al my tyrne, of any man, noufer in
yngland ne in partie3 biond pe see, that kouthe cure
fistula in ano ; outake a frere minour that was with the
prince of Wale3 in gason & gyan, which rose3 & bosted

28 hym that he had cured the forseid sekenes. And at
london he deceyued many men; and when he mist nost
cure som man, he made suggestion to tham that no man
mist cure tham, and that afferned he with sweryng that

32 jif the fistule war dryed, that the pacient at the next shuld
no3t eschape dethe ; whiche, forsoé, y-lfte & forsake of
hym I cured perfulite. And to remoue false opinions of
ignorant men, for witnes I putte experience. Auicen,

36 forsoé, seip, ‘experience overconpé reson’ ; and gali
ein pantegni seip, ‘No man *ow for to trust in reson
aloon but 3it it be proved of experience.’ And he seith
in anouer place, ‘Experience without reson is feble, &

40 so is reson withoute experience fest vnto hym.’ Neper-
The Qualities required in a good Surgeon.

lesse I afferne noȝt that I miȝt hele al fistulae in ano. ffor som ben vncurable as it shal be seid [more fully] within when I shal trete of tham. ffirst it bihoueth hym that wil profite in this crafte that he sette god afore euermore in all his werkis, and euermore calle mekely with hert and mouth his help; and som tyme visite of his wynnyngis pour men aftir his myȝt, that thai by thair prayers may gete hym grace of the holy goste. And that he be noȝt 8 y-founden temerarie or bosteful in his seyingis or in his dedes; and abstene he hym fro moche speche, and most among grete men; and answere he sleiȝly to thingis y-asked, that he be noȝt y-take in his wordes. fforsoth 12 ȝif his werkis be oft tyme knowen for to discorde fro his wordes and his byhestis, he shal be halden more vnworthi, and he shal blenmyssh his oone gode fame. Wherfore seij a versifiour, ‘ vincat opus verbum, minuit iactantia 16 famam’; ‘lat werke ouercome thi worde, for boste lesseneȝ gode lose.’ Also be a leche noȝt mich laughyng ne mich playing. And als moche as he may withoute harme fle he þe felawshippe of knaifes and of vnu[n]este 20 persones. And be he euermore occupied in thingis that biiholdith to his crafte; outhir rede he, or studie he, or write or pray he; for the excercye of bokes worshippep a leche. ffor why; he shal bop byholden and he shal 24 be more wise. And aboue al pise it profiteþ to hym that he be founden euermore sobre; ffor dronkenneȝ destroyeth al vertu and bringith it to not, as seith a wise man, ‘Ebrietas frangit quicquid sapiencia tangit’: ‘Dron- 28 kenes breketh what-so wisdom toucheth.’ Be he content in strange places of metes and drinkes per y-founden, vsyng mesure in al thingis. ffor the wise man seith, ‘Sicut ad omne quod est mensuram ponere prodest, Sic 32 sine mensura deperit omne quod est’: ‘As it profiteþ to putte mesure to al thing that is, So without mesure perissheþ all þing pat is.’ Skorne he no man. ffor of that it is seid, ‘Deridens alios non inderisus abibit’: ‘He 36 that skorneȝ other men shal not go away vnskorned.’ 3if ther be made speche to hym of any leche, nouther sette he hym at nouȝt ne preise hym to mich or com-mende hym, but thus may he curteysly answere; ‘I haue 40
The Qualities needed in a successful Surgeon.

nost vrey knowleche of hym, but I lerned nost ne I have not herd of hym but gode and honeste.' And of this shal honour and thankyngis of eche party encreasse and multi-
plie to hym; after this, honour is in the honorant & nost in the honored. Consider he nost ouer openly the lady or the dousters or oper fair wymmen in gret mennes2 [houses] ne profre than nost to kisse, ne touche not 8 priuely ne apertely their pappes, ne their handes, ne their share,3 that he reune nost into the indignacion of the lord ne of noon of his. In as moche as he may, greue he no servant, but *gete he their loue and their gode will.

12 Abstene he hym fro harlotrie als were in wordes as in dedes in every place, for zif he vse hym to harlotery in priue places som tyme in opene place ther may falle to hym vnworship of yuel vsage; aftir pat it is seyde, 16 'Pede super colles pedes vbi pedere nolles.' 'ffart vpon hille3 and thou shalt fart whar thou wolde nost agayn thi wille3.' And it is seid in anooper place, 'Shrewed speche4 corrumpith gode maners.' When seke men, forsoth, or 20 any of tham bysyde comep to the leche to aske help or counsel of hym, be he nost to tham ouer felle ne ouer homely, but mene in beryng aftir the askyngis of the persone5; to som reuently, to som comunely. for after 24 wise men, Ouer moche homelynes bredep dispisyng. Also it spedep pat he have semyng excusacions that he may not incline to paire askyngis, without harmyng or without indignacion of som gret man or frende, or for 28 necessarie ocupacion. Or feyne he hym hurt, or for to be seke, or som other couenable cause by whiche he may likely be excused. Therfor, zif he will fauoure to any mannes askyng, make he couenant for his travaile, and 32 take it byforehande3. But avise pe leche hym-self wele that he giffe no certayn answer in any cause, but he se first pe sikenes and the maner of it; and when he hap seen and assaied it, poz-al hym seme that the seke may 36 be heled, neperlesse he shal make pronostieacion to pe pacient pe perile3 to come zif the cure be differred. And zif he se pe pacient persewe bisily the cure,6 pan after that pe state of pe pacient askep aske he boldly more 40 or lesse; but euer be he warre of scarce askyngis, ffor
courteous, and not jealous of other leeches;
continent, friendly to servantes, ["leaf 148]
chaste; easy of address, neither too rough nor too familiar
not too ready to undertake a case, and always to see it before giving advice;
to have a clear understanding about the fee before operating.
Advice to a Surgeon about Fees and Behaviour.

ouer scarce askyngis settep at not both pe markette and the thing. Theryfor for the cure of fistula in ano, when it is curable, aske he competently, of a worthi man and a gret an hundred marke or fourty 4 pounde, wiþ robeþ and feeþ 1 of an hundred shillyng terme of lyfe by 3ere. Of lesse men fourty pounde, or fourty marke aske he without feeþ; And take he noþt lesse þan an hundred shillyngis. ffor neuer in all my lyf 8 toke I lesse than an hundred shillyng for cure of that sekenes. Neþerlesse do another man as hym þink better and more spedefulle. And 3if the pacientes or thair frendeþ or seruantþ aske by how moche tyme he hopeth 12 to hele it, cuermore lat the leche byhete þe double þat he supposeth to spede by half; that is 3if the leche hope to hele þe pacient by twenty wekes—that is the comon course of curyng—adde he so many ouer. ffor it is better 16 that the terme be lengthed þan the cure. ffor prolongacion of the cure giffþ cause of dispairying to the pacienteþ when triste to the leche is moste hope of helthe. And 3if the pacient considere or wondre or aske why that he 20 putte hym so long a tyme of curyng, siþ þat he heled hym by the half, answere he that it was for that the pacient was strong-herted, and suffrid wele sharp þingis, and that he was of gode complexion and hadde able fleshe 24 to hele; & feyne he othir causes pleseable to the pacient, ffor pacientþ of syche wordeþ are proude and delited. Also dispose a leche *hym that in clothes and othir apparalyngis be he honeste, noþt likkenyng hymself in apparalyng or 28 beryng to mynistralleþ, but in clothing and beryng shew he the maner of clerkes. ffor why ; it semeth any discrete man y-cladde with clerkis clothing for to occupie gentil meþneþ bordeþ. ¶ Haue the leche also clene handes 32 and wele shapen naileþ & clensed fro all blaknes and filthe. And be he curtaise at lordeþ bordeþ, and displesse he noþt in wordes or dedes to the gestes syttyng by ; here he many þingis but speke he but fewe. ¶ For a wise man seith, 36 'It someth more to vse the eres than þe tunge' ; And in an-þer place, '3if thou had bene stille thou had bene holden a philosophre.' And when he shal speke, be the wordeþ short, and, als mich as he may, faire and resonable 40
and withoute sweryng. ¶ Be war that ther be neuer founden double worde\(^1\) in his mouthe, for zif he be founden trew in his wordes fiewe or noon shal doute in 4 his dede. Lere also a zong leche gode prouerbe\(^3\) pertenynge to his crafte in confortyng of pacientez. ¶ Or zif pacientes pleyne that ther medicynes bene bitter or sharp or sich other, than shal the leche sey to the pacient 8 thus; "It is redde in the last lesson of matyns of the natiniè of oure lord that oure lorde Ihesus criste come into this world for the helthe of mannes kynd to the maner of a gode leche and wise. And when he cometh 12 to the seke man he sheweth hym medicynes, som liʒt and som hard; and he seip to the seke man, ‘zif pou wilt be made hole pise and pise shal thou tak.’ ¶ Also in another place in an omely upon the gospel of the sone\(^3\) 16 of Zebedee, wher per moder askid seyng, ‘lورد, sey þat my two sones sitte in thy kyngdome, þe tone on þi rʒt hand and the toþer on the left.’ And Ihesus answeryng seide, ‘þe wote neuer what þe ask;’ þan seid he to the 20 sone\(^3\) of Zebedee, ‘May þe drink þe chalice þat I am to drink?’ þai seid to him, ‘We may’; as zif he seid to þam, ‘zif zoure soule or mynd couaite þat deliteþ, drinke þe first þat sorowþe or akeþ.’ And so by bitter 24 drinkis of confection it is come to the ioyes of helpe.”

Ouer that hym ow to comorte þe pacient in monysshyn hym that in anguisshe\(^3\) he be of gret hert. ffor gret hert makeþ a man hardy and strong to suffre sharp pingis 28 and greuous: And it is a gret vertue and an happy, ffor Boecius seip, De disciplina scolarium, ‘He is noʒt worþi of þe poynt of swetnes that kan noʒt be lymed with greuynge of bitternes. ffor why; a strong medicyne answerith 32 to a strong sekenes.’ And þeron seip a wise man, ‘Be no cure sene heuy or greuous to the to whiche folowep one heeful effecte.’ ¶ And in anoþer place it is seid, ‘happy or blessid be þat day þat ordeyneþ mery þere.’

36 And anoþer seith, ‘he may neuer be in reste of body þat is oute of reste of soule; I wil suffre lesse pingis þat I suffre noʒt more greuous.’ It semeþ a gret herted man for to suffre sharp pingis; he, forsoþ, þat is wayke of 40 hert is noʒt in waye of curacion, ffor *why; for soþe in al

\(1\) dupliciter sermo.
\(2\) Si mens vestra appareat quod demulcit, prius bibite quod dolet et sic per amarum poculum confectionis pervenitur ad gaudia salutis.

\(3\) The effect of mind on body.
The Duty of a Surgeon to his Patient.

my lyf I haue sene but fewe laborante in pis vice heled in any sikenes: perfore it is to be-war to wise men pat pei entremette nozt with sich. for whi; pe wise man seip, 'All pinges ar hard to a waik hert man, for pai 4 trw enermore yuelle3 to be nyze to pam; pei drede enermore, pai suffre no pinges, pai are enermore vnstable and vnwise; perfore a versifour seip of tham, 'Quominus nil pacior paciendi me tenet horror': pat is po-al I 8 suffre no-ping, vgglynes of suffrying holdeth me. If Also it spedeth pat a leche kunne talke of gode tale3 and of honest that may make pe pacientes to laughe, as wele of the biblee as of other tragedie3; & any othir pinges of which it 12 is nozt to charge while pat pey make or induce a li3ht hert to pe pacient or pe sike man. If Discouer neuer the leche vnwarly the counsell3 of his pacient3, als wele of men as of wymmen, ne2 sette nozt oon to anoper at nozt, po-al 16 he haue cause, pat he be nozt gilty of counsell; for 3if a man se pe hele wele anoper maunnes counsell he wil trist better in pe. Many pinges, forsope, bene to be kepte of a leche, wipoute pese pat ar seid afore, pat may nozt 20 be noted here for ouer moche occupying. But it is nozt to dout pat if pe forseid be wele kepte pat-ne pai shal giffe a gracious going to pe vsr to pe h3zte of worship and of wynynge8; for Caton seip, 'Virtutem primam puta 24 esse compescere linguan': The first vertu trow you to be to refreyne pe tong. Aftur al pe pise it houeth that he knowe pe names of pe instrumentis pat perteneth to pe cure of pe fistule, withoute whiche a leche may nozt wele 28 spode hym. Of which pe first is called 'Sequere me' —'follow me'—whose shap is shewed wher pe instrument3 ar paynted [fig. 1]. And it is called 'Sequere me' for it is pe first instrument pertenynge to pat werk; for a lech 32 ow for to serche per-with pe way of pe fistule whider it go,p, wher by pe midde3 of longaon or nozt. And it ow to be made on pe same maner as wymmen vs3p in pair heued3; and of pe same metal; and it ow to be 36 smal pat it may lijly be plied & replied. And be pe heued3 als little as pai may—wele be, elle3 pai ni3t nozt wele entere pe mou3p of pe fistule for pe streitnes of it.

1 Quamvis. 2 MS. pe. 3 quia ea exercendi ad culmen honoris et lucis aditum praebent generosum. 4 in capitolibus. 5 capita.
The Instruments required for a Fistula Operation.

ffor why; oft tyme sffistule in ano hath ri3t smale hole3, so pat som tyme pai shew no3t but pat per appereth bolnyng in pe moupes of pám. Afterward is per 4 anoper instrument, pat is called 'Acus rostrata,' a snowted nedle, for it hath pe tone heued like a snowte, and in pe toper an y3e like a nedel by whiche predes ow to be drawn agayn by midde3 of pe fistule, as it shal 8 be seid within in his place. And it ow to be of siluer, as it is paynted; and it ow to be no gretter ne lenger in pe snowte pan as it is paynted, but it ow to be longer atte pe left, pat it contene in al 8 ynches in lenghpe.1 If pe prid instrument is called 'tendiculum,' and it ow to be made of boxe or of anopir competent tree, nouper lenger ne gretter pan his shap is paynted. And it ow to haue an hole purgh in pe side, as it is peynted, 16 In whiche hole be per putte * 2 in a wrayst,3 by midde3 of whiche wraiste in pe ouer ende shal be a litel hole purgh whiche shal be putte pe two ende3 of grete predes four folde, goyng atte firste by pe towel4 and pe hole of pe fistule; whiche predes is called ffrenum cesaris, and the whiche also goyng atuyx pe wraiste, in wraistyng pe skynne atuyx pe tewel & pe fistule be faste constreyned aboue pe snowte of pe nedel, vnto pat kittyng be done. 24 'Siringa' is an holow instrument by pe midde3, and it ow to be made of the shappe as it is peynted here, nouper gretter ne lenger, but even after pe shappe as it is peynted here; ne haue it no3t but oon hole in pe neper ende or smaller ende, as it is peynted here [see p. 10, Plates II and III].

2 The words from here to the end of this page are reproduced in facsimile in Plate III.
PLATE II.—The instruments used by John Arderne in the cure of fistula.
(1) The probe—sequere me; (2) The snouted needle—acus rostrata; (3) The dilator—tendiculum;
(4) The strong thread—Frenum Caesaris; (5) The peg—vertile—fitting into the hole in the wide
part of the tendiculum; (6) The syringe in general use with lateral openings; (6a) Arderne's
modification of the syringe with a terminal opening only. [From Sloane MS. 2002, leaf 24.]
of an
rectal

fyn's
hent
litharge
use oil.

ter
lows
vrk fat
lf
el
ch
r pipe.
Of pe aposteme in pe lure causyng pe fistule, and pe cure of tham.

2. [T] hof-al pe principal entent was for to trete de fistula in ano, Neperles it spedep first for to touche somwhat of aposteme bredyng per-in or nige, sipe oft tyme aposteme3 bredyng per bene cause of fistule or of cancre. ffor, after auctours, Aposteme y-bred in any place of pe body, if it be not y-helid by pre or four monepes, it is turned into a fistule or a cancre. Therfore when ther falleth ane aposteme in pe lure or nige1 pou shalt knowe it by pes signes; pat is by bolnyng, akynge, brynnyng, 12 zekyng & prikkyng. And the pacient for akynge and anguissh may nouper sitte ne ligge ne slepe. Whiche apperyng, first it is to labour to pe slakyng or esyng of the akynge and brendynge and of oper accidente without repercussione. ffor in pe lure ow nozt to be repercussion, sipe it is ane emunctory, and in emunctorie3 ow it nozt to be done; pes bene emunctories:—pe armeholes, pe peholes, pe chawelle3, &c. And witte pou after 20 Gilbertyne pat ane aposteme beyng within pe lure is cured with pe infusion of oile roset in which is ceruse distempred, or led brennt, or litarge, or all pise if pai be hadde, or with pe 3olk of an ey. And he be euermore 24 warre of paynyng of egestion. And 3if his wombe be costyue be it softened pat pe hardnes of pe ordure brynynge nozt in anguissh in egestion doyng. And be it softened with ane emplastre of maluez & swynes grese; Or with 28 water of decoccioun of maluez and branne, with oile or butter fressh, or suche other, and be it zette in by a clisterye. Therfore take oyle roset and medle it with pe zolke of a rawe ey in euen porcion. Aftir putte it in a 32 little bleddere, pan take a Nastar of tree5 and putte it in pe bladder and bynde it aboute wip a strong prede, and enoynt pe for ende wele with oyle roset, and softly putte it in pe lure and presse pat is in pe breddre with pe 36 syngres in-to pe lure. pis, forsop, swagpe and softenepe brengyng, pe prikkyng, smertyng akynge, and confortep pe membre in bope cause, pat is
bope in hote and colde. for, after auctores, Oile roset
coldep ane hote membre and hotep ane colde membre⁴; 
and it dop many oper profites pere and in al pe 
membres of pe body. And perfore a gode leche peruey⁵ ⁴
hym pat he want neuer oyle roset, sipe per procedep of 
it many helpyngis to mannes body; for why; after Galien
to euerakyng hote oile roset is mytigatife. Vpon pe 
aposteme, forsope, tvward be putte a gode emplastre and 8 
ri³t maturatif of diaquillon resolute with oile roset, or oile 
of lilie³, or of camamill, or dialtred,³ or comon oyle, pat is 
oyle of olyue, or swyne grese, or gandres,⁴ or maulerdes,⁵ 
or hennes grese. for whi; diaquillon pus y-ordeyned and 12 
put-to maturep colde materies; & resoluep & mollifiep 
hard materies. Also be per made suche a vntment pat is 
ri³t mitigatiue. Recipe: tame comon malue³ M. i or M. ij, 
& brisse pam in a morter, and put pam in a quart of 16 
oyle of olyue³ and lat pam putrisie perin 7 dayes or 9. 
After boile pam long at pe fire vnto pe oile be wele 
grene; after cole it and *kepe it: pis oyntment is ry³t 
mitigatiue of akynge of aposteme, and mollifie³ pan if it 20 
be put vpon [tham] hote with lana succida. Lana succida 
is wolle pat growthew atuix pe legge³ of ane ewe aboute pe 
vudder, ful of swet,⁷ nost y-wasshe, and it opnep strongly 
and consumeth; oyle, forsope, of propirte holde³ opne 24 
and draweth and swagep akynge. If, forsope, pou haue 
nost lanam succidam pan dippe a lyn clout in pe forseid 
oyntement and putte it hotte vpon and bynde it warly 
pat it fal not away. Also ane emplastre of pe forseid 28 
malue³ is a ful gode maturatif and mitigatif of akynge in 
aposteme of pe lure and of wyymmen³ pappe³; and to al 
oper aposteme³ pat nedep maturacion. And it is made 
opus. Recipe: malue³ tame M. i. or ij; sepe pam in 32 
watir to pai wax softe, pan put pam out of pe watre 
and presse ouer pe watre of pam, and affir hakke pam 
small wip a sharp knyf on a clene borde; pan frye pam 
in a panne ouer pe fire with comon oyle or butter or 36 
swynes grese, Or, if pe pacient be riche or noble, with 
son of pe forseid oile³. And affir vpon clene stuppes be 
it put on pe aposteme. And witte pou here pat if pou 
may hane wormed it profitep mich in curyng if it be 40 

1 oleum ros, 
membbrum 
supercalles-
cens infrigi-
dat et super 
infrigidatum 
caleficit. 
2 "prov-
deat." 
3 dialthea. 
4 anatis. 
5 mallardea. 
6 "Malvas 
domesticae 
communes." 
7 sudore 
imbuta. 

Nota. 
Pappis [of] 
wyymmen.

The Treatment of an Ischio-rectal Abscess.
The Treatment of an Ischioc-rectal Abscess.

soden & made wip þe vsesid malue3, for þat emplastre is best mitigatiue of akyng of pappes, & bryngþ in quyntour and confortþ þe place, and makeþ þe mater f 4 for to vapour by þe pore3. And for certeyn it availeþ in all aposteme3 in euery place of þe body, and also in many brissure3. With þis emplastre in cures of pappes I haue y-gette many worshippe3 and benefetes, for certaynly 8 it is soueraynly mitigatyue. But witte þou after all auctours—and I haue proued it for certayn experience—þat ane aposteme bredyng nere þe lure owe not to abide to it breste by itself, but þe leche owe bisily for to fele wip his fynger þe place of the aposteme, and wher-so is founden any softenes, þer, þe pacient noþt wittynþ, wary, be it boldely opned wip a ful sharp lancette, þat þe quitour and þe corrupte blode may gone oute. Or elle3, 16 forsop þe gutte or þarme þat is called longaon, þat deserneþ to þe lure, shal be bristen wip-in þe lure, and presed byfore þat þe aposteme be bristen without-forpe. Whiche case byfallyng, if it al-oonly brest within it is of 20 hard cure, and þan shal þer be ragadie3 or frousinge3; þorsop if it briste bope within and with-out, þan may it neuer be cured but by a ful experte cirurgen in his crafte. Þor than may it þe fistele day be called a fistule; 24 siþe a fistule is noþt elle3 þan ane vlicus vndesicceable, and for it is vndesicceable, þerfore by consequens it is vncurable, siþe no wonde ne vlicus may be heled but if it may be dried. Som tyme it bifalleth som men for to 28 haue ane hole apperyng outward al-oonly, persyng þur3 þe longaon within þe lure by þe space of ane ynche or of tuo, and hisyde þat anoþer hole with-out, noþt persyng þe longaon with-in-forp. And I haue sene som 32 haue 7 or 9 hole3 on þe tone party of þe buttokkis, and 6 or 5 on þe toþer party, of whiche noon of þam, outake oon, persed longaon. And I haue sene som haue 2 or 3 hole3 on þe buttokke, and 2 or 3 desecondyng 36 *doun into þe codde of þe testicule3. And I haue sene som haue oon hole or many in þe tone buttok, and oon or tuo on þe party of þe þerde persyng als wele longaon as þe þerde. And in þis case, as by my demyng, sych 40 pacientes bene vncurable, and þat for fistulyng of þe
Sequela of an Ischio-rectal Abscess.

zerde. And pat may be known, for som-tyme pe sperme goþ oute by pe hole of pe zerde instistulate, and som-tyme vryne or both. Neþerlesse I cured a preste, at lincolne in pe house of Maistre Giffray Scrope, pat 4 had aposteme in his zerde, of whiche als wele vryne as quitour come done into his codde, and sometyme blode went oute by pe hole of pe zerde, and his testicules war bolned out of mesure. Therfore, first, I putte on his 8 testicule3 oon oyntement ruptorye, and I made an hole by whiche went out bothe vryne and quitour; pis i-do, per shewed ane bolnyng vndernepe in pe zerde ríñt be pe lure, whiche I opned wip a ruptorie; whiche y-opned, 12 per went out bope quitour and vryne. Whom y-cured perfitely, oure lord beyng mene 1; but for certeyne his lure & longaon war vnhuerte. And witte pou pat pis cure was ful hard. Þerfore in suche þingis be a leche avised 16 and discrete. Also a leche owe to be circumспект in his askyngis, pat he enquerre bisily of pe pacient if he fele ony tymo ventosite3 or egestion3 go out by pe holes of pe fistule. Also enquerre he of pe pacient 3if he fele 20 any heuynes or greuousnes in his heued; Or if it appere to hym pat pe house some-tyme is turned vp-so-doune 2 as it shuld falle, and pe pacient may noşt for drede of fallyng enclynye to pe erthe; And if pe pacient fele 24 akyng and heuynes or greuousnes in his lende3 and feblenes in his stomake. Also sey he to pe pacient þus: ‘I wote pat pe kynde of pe fistule is soche þat somtyme it is opned by itself and putteþ out quitour, 28 somtyme pikke and somtyme þynne, somtyme watery and somtyme blody. And somtyme it is closed be itself, & so by a moneþ or more þer renneþ noþing out; and eft-soneþ it bigynneþ to ake or pat it caste out quitour. 32 And afterward it is opned by itself, and renneþ as it is seid afofe, and afterward it is sperred.’ 4 for suche prono-sticacions shewedþ and tokneth to pe pacient þat pe leche is experte in þe knowyng of þe fistule, and so þe 36 pacient wil better trist vnto hym. And witte pou, aftir Bernard of Gordon, þat pe synoweþ closyng and openyng þe lure haþe festnyng wip þe stomake and wip þe ventricule3 of þe brayne, And for this cause suche 40

1 Domino mediante.
2 ut si appareat et quod domus subverterat.
3 “et si gravitatatem in lumbia”.
4 et postea clauditur.
Prognosis of a Fistula in Ano.

in capite.

pacientes ar som tyme vexed in pe heued and in pe stomak. When pe leche, forsope, haþ talked þus to þe pacient, as it is seid, and þe pacient aske & persew 4 for to be cured of hym, ask þan þirst þe siȝt of þe sekenes; Whiche y-sene, be þe leche war þat he put noȝt his fynger in þe lure of þe pacient, ne shewe no pryue instrumente; wher-of þe pacient myȝt wonder or 8 be aferd; or if perauenture þe pacient haue wilyly broȝt in with hym any leche for to aspye, as I haue oft tyme sene. But considere þe leche bisly þe maner of þe fistule, & perceyue if it be curable. 3it 2 a leche ow for 12 þat þe pacient haue suficiently put þe medicine þat be not anonyt, for to make pronosticaciones wilely þat þe sekenes askeþ yþyng in tyme of curying, for þat þat þe medicineþ y-putte to may not abyde þor long for purgying of þe wombe, and for moche 16 moystenes goyn out of þe lure, and for many oþer lettyngis, as for þe lure is to streyte, or þe buttokkes be to grete or hard, or for þe pacient is waike of herte or vn-obedient for topersew his cure or for to kepe his dicte, and 20 for many oþer þat hym ow for to fayne on his owne heued þat he supposeth be necessarye. 3 And þise pronosticated, if þe pacient stond stedfastly þat he be cured, or aske if he may be cured, þan sey þe leche þus: 'I doute noȝt, 24oure lord beyng mene, and þi gode pacience folowyng, 3if þou wylt competently make satisfaccion to me, as sich a cure—noȝt litle to be commendèd—askþ, þat ne þingis y-kept þat ow to be kepte, and y-lefte þat ow 28 to be lefte, as it is seyd, I shal now brysing þis cure to a lounable ende and heulfull.' And þan acorde þay of couenant, of whiche couenant—al excusacione y-put abak—take he þe hal byfore handes 5; And þan assigne 32 a day to þe pacient when he will bygynne. In þe mene tyme, forsope, ordeyne þe leche redy his medicynes and his instrumentis; þat is to sey þat he haue first two spongis or þre at þe lest, & a rasour or a full sharp 36 launcet, and oþer instrumentis named afore, as Sequere me, Acum rostratam, Tendiculum; And silke þredes, and lyn cloutes, and girdелел, and oþer þat ar seid afore and to be seid here-after. Haue he also redy a medicine 40 restrictyne of blode, and warme or leuke watre, and all
The Influence of the Moon and Planets on Operating.

ofir necesarie, that no-þing wante that the leche may nede in his wirchyng. And ouer al this it is best & most sikir that he kutte no3t in þe lure ne do no violence ne grecousnes to it in þe tymne þat þe mone is in Scorpiun, 4 or Libra, or sagittarius, for þan of astronomye3 is forbede þer kuttyng. ffor as wille souerayne astronomie3 and astrologiens, þat is to sey Ptholomeus,1 Pictagoras,2 Rasis, and Haly, &c. A cyrguien ow no3t for to kutte or brenne 8 in any membre of a mannys body, ne do fleobotomye whilst þe mone is in a signe gouernyng or tokenyng þat membre.3

3 The Latin texts contain a chapter headed

Nota de cognitione signorum Lunæ.

Si quis seire et invenire voluerit in quo signo cölçi fuerit Luna omni die, primo sciat signum in quo Luna soli conjungatur et diem conjunctionis per kalendarium. Quo invento tunc scias quod ab illa hora diei vel noctis in qua fuerit conjunctionio usque 16 ad talem horam diei sequentis compleatur, prima dies Lune. Postea computa quot sunt dies ab imprimatione predicta usque ad diem de quo queras in kalendario. Tune videndum est in tabula precedente ubi inventitur numeros ille. Quo invento, queratur 20 in superiori capite tabulæ sub quo signo Luna fuerit prima sub quo recte descendens transeas donec directe perveneas ad signum correspondentis Linealiter numero etatis Lunæ predicte, et in illo signo existit Luna eodem die. Et nota quod in ista computatione dies 24 naturalis ad meridien diei incipit secundum Astronomos. Qui, igitur, de tempore certificari voluerit tabulam sequentem de 12 signis discat et agnoscat; sic, incipit Aries, Taurus, Cancer, Virgo, &c.

[The Table given on pages 18, 19 follows here in Latin Text.]

Sicunt volunt Astrologi summì videlet Ptolomeus, Pythagoras, Rhasis, Haly, &c., non debet cirurgus incidere vel urere in aliquo membro corporis humaní nec facere phlebotomiá dum Luna fuerit in signo regnanté illud membrum. Nam secundum est quod 32 signa zodiaci regunt 12 partes humani corporis prout patet in imagine predicta, ubi aries quod est signum igneum temperate siccum caput regit cum suis contentis. Luna vero in ariete existente cave ab incisione in capite et facie et [ne] incidas venam capitalem. 36 Luna vero in tauro existente, cave ab incisione coli vel gutturis, nec incidas venam in his locis. Luna existente in geminis cave ab incisione spatularum brachiorum et manuum nec aperias venam in his locis. Luna existente in cancro cave ab incisione in mammis vel pectore aut stomacho, et a lesione pulmonis, nec incidas arteriam seu venam ad ipsam directionem. Luna existente

1 Ptolomeus, 2 Pythagoras.

The best astrologers declare that no operation, not even bleeding, should be undertaken whilst the moon is in the sign governing the part to be operated upon.
in leone cave a lesione laterum, costarum et ne incidas in dorsum neque per aperationem neque per ventosam. Luna existente in virginve cave in ventre aut in locis interioribus occultis, nec minus 4 matricem mulierum deservientem. Luna existente in libra cave ne umbilico aut in natibus et hane [in ano] nec in renibus, nec venam renibus serviente aperias, nec ventosam apponas. Luna existente in scorpione cave testiculorum, virgoe virillis, colli vesicae, 8 nec aperias venam testiculorum deservientem nec ventosam apponas. Luna in sagittario existente cave ab incisione femorum nec incidas maculas vel superfinitates quascunque in corpore humano existentes. Luna existente in Capricorno cave in genibus et a lesione venarum 12 et nervorum in his locis. Luna existente in aquario cave ne incidis in tiblis aut in nervis earum a genibus usque ad inferiora cavillarum. Luna vero existente in pisce cave in pedibus, nec venam aperias in eorum extremitatibus.1

A note on the recognition of the Signs of the Moon.

16 If any one wishes to know and to discover in which sign of the heaven the moon is on any day, he must first discover in the almanac the sign in which the Moon is in conjunction with the Sun and the day of the conjunction. When this is found you know 20 the first day of the moon because it is from that hour of the day or night when the conjunction occurs to the same hour of the next day. Then calculate by the almanac the number of days from the new moon thus obtained to the day you want. Look next in the previous table where the number is found, and when it is found look in the upper line of the table for the sign in which the moon is. Coming straight down from this you cross until you come directly to the sign corresponding lineally with the number 28 of the age of the moon, and this gives the sign of the moon on that day. And note that in this calculation the natural day begins at midday according to the Astronomers. If any one wishes therefore to be sure of the time let him learn and under-

32 stand the following table of the 12 signs. It begins thus—Aries, Taurus, Cancer, Virgo, &c.

[The table is given on pp. 18 and 19.]

The highest Astrologers, viz.: Ptolomy, Pythagoras, Rhasis, Haly, &c., aver that a surgeon ought not to cut or to cauterise any 36 member of the human body nor to breathe a vein so long as the moon is in the house ruling that member. For the 12 signs of the Zodiac rule the twelve parts of the human body, as is clear from the aforementioned drawing, where Aries, which is a fiery sign 40 moderately dry, governs the head with its contents. But when the moon is in Aries beware of operating upon the head or face and do not open one of the head veins. When the moon is in Taurus refrain from operating upon the neck or throat and do not 44 bleed from a vein in these parts. When the moon is in Gemini beware of operating on the shoulders, arms or hands, and do not

1 Supplied from Rawlinson, C 355, in the Bodleian Library.

ARDERNE.
Table for finding the Moon’s house.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Month</th>
<th>Pisces</th>
<th>Aries</th>
<th>Taurus</th>
<th>Gemini</th>
<th>Cancer</th>
<th>Leo</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Capricorn</td>
<td>Aquarius</td>
<td>Pisces</td>
<td>Aries</td>
<td>Taurus</td>
<td>Gemini</td>
<td>Cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sagittarius</td>
<td>Capricorn</td>
<td>Aquarius</td>
<td>Pisces</td>
<td>Aries</td>
<td>Taurus</td>
<td>Gemini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scorpio</td>
<td>Libra</td>
<td>Scorpio</td>
<td>Libra</td>
<td>Scorpio</td>
<td>Sagittarius</td>
<td>Aquarius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virgo</td>
<td>Leo</td>
<td>Virgo</td>
<td>Leo</td>
<td>Virgo</td>
<td>Libra</td>
<td>Scorpio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cancer</td>
<td>Leo</td>
<td>Cancer</td>
<td>Leo</td>
<td>Cancer</td>
<td>Leo</td>
<td>Virgo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gemini</td>
<td>Cancer</td>
<td>Gemini</td>
<td>Cancer</td>
<td>Gemini</td>
<td>Leo</td>
<td>Virgo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taurus</td>
<td>Gemini</td>
<td>Taurus</td>
<td>Gemini</td>
<td>Taurus</td>
<td>Leo</td>
<td>Virgo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aries</td>
<td>Taurus</td>
<td>Aries</td>
<td>Taurus</td>
<td>Aries</td>
<td>Leo</td>
<td>Virgo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>March</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table for finding the Moon's house.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virgo</th>
<th>Libra</th>
<th>Scorpio</th>
<th>Sagittarius</th>
<th>Capricorn.</th>
<th>Aquarius</th>
<th>Pisces</th>
<th>Aries</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Leo</td>
<td>Virgo</td>
<td>Libra</td>
<td>Scorpio</td>
<td>Sagittarius</td>
<td>Capricorn.</td>
<td>Aquarius</td>
<td>Pisces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cancer</td>
<td>Leo</td>
<td>Virgo</td>
<td>Libra</td>
<td>Scorpio</td>
<td>Sagittarius</td>
<td>Capricorn.</td>
<td>Aquarius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gemini</td>
<td>Cancer</td>
<td>Leo</td>
<td>Virgo</td>
<td>Libra</td>
<td>Scorpio</td>
<td>Sagittarius</td>
<td>Capricorn.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taurus</td>
<td>Gemini</td>
<td>Cancer</td>
<td>Leo</td>
<td>Virgo</td>
<td>Libra</td>
<td>Scorpio</td>
<td>Sagittarius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aries</td>
<td>Taurus</td>
<td>Gemini</td>
<td>Cancer</td>
<td>Leo</td>
<td>Virgo</td>
<td>Libra</td>
<td>Scorpio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pisces</td>
<td>Aries</td>
<td>Taurus</td>
<td>Gemini</td>
<td>Cancer</td>
<td>Leo</td>
<td>Virgo</td>
<td>Libra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aquarius</td>
<td>Pisces</td>
<td>Aries</td>
<td>Taurus</td>
<td>Gemini</td>
<td>Cancer</td>
<td>Leo</td>
<td>Virgo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capricorn.</td>
<td>Aquarius</td>
<td>Pisces</td>
<td>Aries</td>
<td>Taurus</td>
<td>Gemini</td>
<td>Cancer</td>
<td>Leo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sagittarius</td>
<td>Capricorn.</td>
<td>Aquarius</td>
<td>Pisces</td>
<td>Aries</td>
<td>Taurus</td>
<td>Gemini</td>
<td>Cancer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

14 19 24 29 15 20 25 30
open a vein in these parts. When the moon is in Cancer refrain from operating upon the breasts or chest or stomach and from injuring the lungs, neither open an artery or a vein in their neighbourhood. When the moon is in Leo take care not to injure the flanks or the ribs, and do not operate upon the back either by cutting or by cupping. When the moon is in Virgo take care not to operate upon the belly or the internal parts, and do not bleed from the veins supplying the womb in women. When the moon is in Libra refrain from operating upon the navel or upon the buttocks or upon the kidneys, and do not open the vein supplying the kidneys, nor apply a cup. When the moon is in Scorpio refrain from operating upon the testicles, the penis and the neck of the bladder; do not open the testicular vein and do not apply a cup. When the moon is in Sagittarius do not operate upon the thighs, do not remove spots or superfluous parts occurring in any part of the human body. When the moon is in Capricornus refrain from the knees and from injuring the veins and nerves in these parts. When the moon is in Aquarius do not operate upon the legs or upon their nerves from the knees to the bottom of the calves. When the moon is in Piscis do not operate upon the feet and do not open the vein in their extremities.

Of diffinition of a fistule, and places pat it is bred in, and when it is curable or not.

[N]ow it is to procede to ye euryng of ye fistule. And after auctours of cirurgie, a fistule is a depe aposteme, hauyng oonly oon hole somtyme, and ofte-tymes two or three, and oftymes mo, and bredyng in eche membre of ye body of aposteme or of a wounde yuel y-cured, giffyng out quitour of diuerse colour and of diuerse substaunce; pat is to sey now white and pinne, now watrye, now as waeshyng of fleshe pat is rawe, now clotty; somtyme myche stykyng, somtyme litle. And 32 somtyme ye holes ar closed be pam-self, and after a fourtenijt or a monep, akyn goyng afore in ye place, pai ar eft-sones opned. And when siche maner fistules is bredde in ye armes or in the brest, or in ye costes, or 36 in ye pies, or in ye knees, or in ye legges, or in ye fete, or in ye hende, or in ye ioyntours *of ye pise, pat it corrupmep oft-tyme ye bone3; and pai ye corruppte ar oft tymes put out by ye hole3 of ye fistule. ¶ Bot fistule3 of 40

1 The MS. Sloane 6 is defective here. The missing folios are supplied from another English version, Sloane 277, made early in the fifteenth century.
Prognosis of Fistulae.

When for-sop thou knowest pat he pat hap fistule in pe lure, or ni3 biside, is strong and pe place of pe sekene3 were colored and pat the pacient is gode herted and abydyng, it is no3t to drede pat-ne pe lech 36 schal spede wele in pe cure of it if he be experete.  

32 When for-sop thou knowest pat he pat hap fistule in pe lure, or ni3 biside, is strong and pe place of pe sekene3 were colored and pat the pacient is gode herted and abydyng, it is no3t to drede pat-ne pe lech

Festred gout bad in women, sometimes cured spontaneously in young men.

An acute illness becomes chronic at the end of a fortnight.

If it be after pe mouyng of pe son, vaiie fistula; or bredyng nize may wele be cured. While3 neperlesse it be no3t ouer olde or depe,2 pat may be known by pe hardnes of pe place and discoloring of pe skynne and mich goyng out of pe egestion3, and feblyne3 of pe pacient, and if it hane perced pe wai3 of pe vryne. If perfor wake pe pacient blynde no3t 28 pe si3t of 3our eizen,3 pat it may no3t deme atuix curable and vnurable.

Of a maner of wirchynge in fistula in ano and pe curying per-of.

32 When for-sop thou knowest pat he pat hap fistule in pe lure, or ni3 biside, is strong and pe place of pe sekene3 were colored and pat the pacient is gode herted and abydyng, it is no3t to drede pat-ne pe lech

Selection of patient.

Festred gout bad in women, sometimes cured spontaneously in young men.

An acute illness becomes chronic at the end of a fortnight.

If it be after pe mouyng of pe son, vaiie fistula; or bredyng nize may wele be cured. While3 neperlesse it be no3t ouer olde or depe,2 pat may be known by pe hardnes of pe place and discoloring of pe skynne and mich goyng out of pe egestion3, and feblyne3 of pe pacient, and if it hane perced pe wai3 of pe vryne. If perfor wake pe pacient blynde no3t 28 pe si3t of 3our eizen,3 pat it may no3t deme atuix curable and vnurable.

Of a maner of wirchynge in fistula in ano and pe curying per-of.

32 When for-sop thou knowest pat he pat hap fistule in pe lure, or ni3 biside, is strong and pe place of pe sekene3 were colored and pat the pacient is gode herted and abydyng, it is no3t to drede pat-ne pe lech

Selection of patient.

Festred gout bad in women, sometimes cured spontaneously in young men.

An acute illness becomes chronic at the end of a fortnight.

If it be after pe mouyng of pe son, vaiie fistula; or bredyng nize may wele be cured. While3 neperlesse it be no3t ouer olde or depe,2 pat may be known by pe hardnes of pe place and discoloring of pe skynne and mich goyng out of pe egestion3, and feblyne3 of pe pacient, and if it hane perced pe wai3 of pe vryne. If perfor wake pe pacient blynde no3t 28 pe si3t of 3our eizen,3 pat it may no3t deme atuix curable and vnurable.

Of a maner of wirchynge in fistula in ano and pe curying per-of.

32 When for-sop thou knowest pat he pat hap fistule in pe lure, or ni3 biside, is strong and pe place of pe sekene3 were colored and pat the pacient is gode herted and abydyng, it is no3t to drede pat-ne pe lech
To be taken to the operating room.

Advice to patient at [* leaf 67]

Time of operation to be brave and obedient.

Patient to be in a good light;

Position to be adjusted.

The leech's mate to be told what to do.

The rectum to be explored with a finger. [Cf. frontispiece]

The fistula to be deemed incurable if the rectum is perforated.

acored in al pings, pan be pe pacient ledde to a place made redy Where pe lech schal do pe mymysteryng of cure. And all men amoued away out-take one or tuo, pat pe lech will haue with hym to his helping, ouper of 4 his owne men or of oper; pan sey pe lech pus to pe pacient, reward yhadde to pe person of pe pacient. ¶ 'Witte your gentilies and your pynes, and also your godehertynes, pat pe gracious perfeccion * of pis cure ow 8 not only to be receed as now to pe possibilite of my gode bisynes, bot also to your gode and abdyng pacience. ¶ And for-alsmich be it no3t hidde to 3ow pat if 3e be vnobedient and vnpacient to my commandyngs, lustynge 12 pe tyne of wirchyng, 3e may falle in-to a ful gret perile or tary longer pe effecte of pe cure. Therfor be\-\-war, For he pat is warned afore is no3t bygiled. Paynful things passep sone when at the next folowe\-\-p glorious 16 helthe.' 2 ¶ bise things yseid, be pe pacient putte vp-on a bedde before a li\-\-\-t Wyndow, and be he putte after pe maner of pe sekenes pat is if pe hole3 of pe fistule be in pe lefte side lye he on pe lefte side. And if pai be 20 in the ri\-\-t side vp-on pe ri\-\-t side, or if pai be to\-\-ward rigebone 3 lie he pan wide opne bope his legge3 or pe tone raised vp after pat it semeth more spedeful and be pai hungen vp with a corde or with a towell festned 24 aboue to a balk or a beme. ¶ be felaw of pe lech sitte at pe bakke of pe pacient, aboue on pe bedde pat pe pacient lie\-\-p in, and hold fast with his hande3 pe ouer buttoke in raisynge it vpward pat pe lech may hane gode 28 si\-\-t in his wyrchyng. ¶ pan at first putte the leche pe schewyng 4 fynger of his left hande enoyned with oile, or som oyntment, in-to pe lure of pe pacient. Which ydo with pe tother hand putte he pe heued of pe instrument 32 pat is called sequere me in-to pe hole of pe fistule * pat is next to pe lure, if pe be many hole3, and assay bisily on pe fynger beyng in pe lure if he fele with it the instrument or fynger without any ping atuix. 36 Which if byfall witte he with-out dout pat pe longaon is persed. ¶ And pan witte he for certayn pat it byhoue\-\-p no\-3t to cure pe pacient with no cure bot cuttyng with yren, or fretyng with a thredre strengely yfestned. 40

1 habito respectu ad personam patientis; 2 Cito trans- sibun penossa, cum in prox- imo salus succedit gloriosa. 3 versus caudam spine dorsi, i.e. "rig- bon" ejus- dem. 4 digitum manus sinis- tre...qui index dic- tur.
If pat hole for-sope be no3t distant fro pe lure bot by a nynch al-one, pan schal kuttyng be pe moste kynde and sonest cure; pat if it be so, pan tak pe lech Acum rostratam and putte he pe end hauyng pe ei3 thur3 pe hole next to pe lure pe lefte fynger yputte, as it is seid, in-to pe lure. And when he selep pe nedle wip his fynger, labor he warly pat he may bring out with his fynger pe heued of pe instrument pur3 pe lure applyng and wryping. ¶ Whiche ydo, be pat taken a four-fold prede of silk white or of strong lyne or tuyne and it is called frenum Cesaris. And be it put in pe ei3 of pe nedle And with pat prede anoper single thred and at one3 and to-gidre be pe nedle drawen pur3 pe lure and pe hole of pe fistule. Afterward pe single prede be fest by itsel no3t constreynyng, bot pat it go no3t out pe lech no3t willyng, par-if parauntert frenum cesaris be kutte or brusten pan schal per anoper frenum cesaris mow be bro3t in with pe forseid prede with-out any anguisch. ¶ Therfor be pe lech witty in pis wirchyng pat he may do, and kon do, tuo things pan he fynde in wrytyngs, * For al ping3 pat ow to be done about sich werk may no3t be expressed in lettre3, and perfor it by-honep a crafty [lech] to be wise and slye wele ymagynynge subtile ping3, pat in pose ping3 pat pertenepe to pe perfitenes of pis werk and aboue po ping3 pat he has lerned in pis boke he may avaipe hym pur3 benefice of his ovne witte; For Boecius seith ¶ De disciplina solarium, He is of moste wreeched witte pat euer more vsep ping3 yfounden and no3t things to be founden.¶ perf or pe frene and pe prede ydrawen, as it is seid, pan may pou chese wheper pou will kutte it or fret it with pe pred. ¶ If thou will kutte it pan schalt pou take acum rostratam and] 2 putte it pur3 pe midde3 of pe lenghe of pe instrument pat is called tendiculum, bygynnyng at pe gretter ende. After take bope pe endes of freni cesaris, drawen pur3 pe middes of pe lure and of pe hole of pe fistule, and pur3 pe middis of pe hole of pe instrument pat is called vertile—a wraite—. Be pai drawen pur3, and be pai faste y-knettid in proporcionyng pe lenghe of pe

1 Sicigitum medicus ingenuus in hac operacione ut plura quam in scriptis inuentat agere sciat: quia omnia quae circa tale opus fieri debeat non possunt litteris exprimi. Et ideo oportet artificem esse providentem, subtilissima bene imaginantium, ut in his quae ad hujus operis perfecta, nem pertinent anser ea quae in hac libello didicerit, ingenio benificio valesse praevalere. Dictit enim Boecius de disciplina scholastica. "Miserrimi est ingenii quin tantum utitur inventa et inventendi."

2 MS. Sloane 6, leaf 147, continues.
Staunching the Blood after Operation.

freni cesaris as it bihoueth, \( \text{fat} \) is after \( \text{pe} \) distance of \( \text{pe} \) hole of \( \text{pe} \) tendiculi to \( \text{pe} \) hole of \( \text{pe} \) fistule; \( \text{pan} \) take \( \text{pe} \) tendicule and putte \( \text{pe} \) snowte of \( \text{pe} \) needle in \( \text{pe} \) hole of \( \text{pe} \) fistule in-putting it strongly. Afterward take \( \text{pe} \) wraiste 4 wip freno cesaris, and put it in \( \text{pe} \) hole of \( \text{pe} \) tendicule, \( \text{pat} \) is \( \text{pe} \) side of it; whiche y-putte in, putte \( \text{pi} \) fynger in \( \text{pe} \) lure, and wip \( \text{pe} \) toper hand prist faste \( \text{pe} \) tendicule with \( \text{pe} \) snowt toward \( \text{by} \) fynger. And when \( \text{pou} \) see\( ; \) 8 tyre, be \( \text{pe} \) wraist turned aboute \( \text{pat} \) frenum cesaris hold fast \( \text{pe} \) tendicule \( \text{pat} \) it go no\( ; \)t out. And so labour \( \text{pe} \) leche vnto \( \text{pat} \) he bringe out \( \text{pe} \) poynt of \( \text{pe} \) snowte by \( \text{pe} \) middes of \( \text{pe} \) lure; and \( \text{pat} \) he streyue fast \( \text{pe} \) 12 flesshe fastened in \( \text{pe} \) frene wip \( \text{pe} \) wraiste and \( \text{pe} \) frene. Whiche y-do, take \( \text{pe} \) instrument \( \text{pat} \) is called coclear—a spone—Of whiche \( \text{pe} \) holow heued be putte in \( \text{pe} \) lure agayn \( \text{pe} \) poynt of \( \text{pe} \) snowte, so \( \text{pat} \) \( \text{pe} \) poynt of \( \text{pe} \) 16 stand in \( \text{pe} \) hole \( \text{pat} \) is in \( \text{pe} \) spone, no\( ; \)t pur3 persed, & be \( \text{pat} \) halde of \( \text{pe} \) felaw of \( \text{pe} \) leche; pis, forsope, shall defende \( \text{pe} \) lure \( \text{pat} \) it be no\( ; \)t hurt, pru3 uncouenable mouyng and sodayn styrryng of \( \text{pe} \) pacient, 20 wip \( \text{pe} \) poynt of \( \text{pe} \) rasour or of \( \text{pe} \) launcet. As soon afterward—\( \text{pe} \) pacient comforted—putte \( \text{pe} \) leche \( \text{pe} \) poynt of \( \text{pe} \) rasour in \( \text{pe} \) holwnes of \( \text{pe} \) snowte \( \text{pat} \) is in \( \text{pe} \) spone, and, als sone as he may, boldly kutte \( \text{pe} \) 24 flesshe fastened in \( \text{pe} \) frene aboue \( \text{pe} \) snowte euen be \( \text{pe} \) middes; and it y-kutte by \( \text{pe} \) middes, \( \text{pe} \) snowte wip \( \text{pe} \) frene shal lepe out by it-self. If, forsope, \( \text{per} \) be many holes \( \text{pat} \) ow to be cutted, be it done as it is 28 seid. Or if it be nede, differre it to ano\( \text{pi} \)r tyme; ff\ol in som case \( \text{pe} \) toper holes beyng outward may be heled wipoute kuttyng or byndyng of prede. Of whiche it shal be seid afterward, \( \text{pan} \) it is to labour to \( \text{pe} \) 32 staunchyng of blode. \( \text{ff} \)irst put a spounge wette in a litel warme watre and wele wrongen in \( \text{pe} \) place of the kuttyng, and hold it \( \text{per} \) fast to receyue \( \text{pe} \) blode, and lat it abide per a gode while; \( \text{per} \)fore when \( \text{pou} \) 36 trowest \( \text{pe} \) sponge to be wele ful of blode, remoue it, and if it be nede putte agayn ano\( \text{pe} \)r sponge, or \( \text{pe} \) same ordeyned in \( \text{pe} \) forseid maner. And when \( \text{pou} \) hast doon \( \text{bus} \), be \( \text{pe} \) pacient raised vp warly, and make hym 40
The After-treatment of a Fistula Operation.

to sitte fast in a redy place vpon þe forseid sponge; and doute not þat ne it shal be wele staunchid. Afterward when þou demeʒ dew tyme, be þe pacient put 4 in a dewe place and þe sponge remoued; and wheþir þe blode be staunchid, or noʃt, putt in þe kuttyng puluer of boli, sanguis draconis, aloes epaticus, puluer of hennes þeþereʒ y-brent, or of an old lyn cloþe y-brynt, 8 asshen of heres of hares y-brent, *Iuyse or puluer of walwort, &c., Of whiche it shal be seid afterward in þair place. But witte þou þat it is noʃt required þat al pise at ooneʒ and to-gidre be putt to, but I putte þam here 12 þat a leche, som wanting αν noʃt y-had of þe forseid þingis, may competently spede wip þe toþer his nedẹʒ or occupacion. for why; eneriche of pise medicynes symply by hymself or medled wip þe white of an ey 16 staunchẹþ wele blode þer and in oþir places. But witte þou þat to worpi men and noble it semeþ to putte to more noble medicynes and more dere. And witte þou þat þe iuse of walwort or puluer of þe same, if it be had 20 redy, is namely in euery medicyne þat is restriuctive of blode. How, forþoþe, þe pouþre of walwort ow to be made, or þe iuse of it to be kepte, it shall be seid afterward. þe medicyne restriuctive, forþoþe, y-put to wip 24 clene stupes and smal, or wip coton wele y-tesed, or wip heres of hares noʃt y-brent, and with lynnen cloutis put aboue, be it warly bounden; þat is to sey be he girded on þe bare naked wele streit wip a lynnen girdel. Afterward haue he a list of wolnen cloþe, and be it bounden byhynd at þe bak of þe pacient to þe lynnen girdel, and lat it descende atuix his buttokes vpon þe cloutes coueryng þe lure, and be it festned fast to þe 32 girdel vpon þe womb, and lat it abide so stille to þe tyme come þat it be eʃt-sones remoued. If þe holes, forþoþe, be in þe buttok somdele remoued fro þe lure, þan most it operwise be bounden. And þat þus, haue 36 þe pacient a wolnen girdel or a lynnen, wip þe whiche he be girded in þe flankeʒ, to þe whiche girdel be hongen a lynnen cloute hauynʃ in brede seuen or 8 ynches, and in lengþeʃals many or mo; þefore be þe pacient girded 40 þat þe side of þe clout next to þe lure lye riyʃ atuix
The After-treatment of a Fistula Operation.

pe buttokkes upon pe lure; and opir cloutes y-putte atuix, pan be bounden two listis hyngyng about pe pie of pe pacient. And if bope pe buttokkes bene hurt, ordeyne he anoper girdel to pe toper, and be it ordeyned 4 as it is seid afore, and on pe same wise. ffor knowe the leche pat competent byndyng shal giffe no3t litte help in curyng. But if medicyn3, forso3p, may cleue to vnto dew tyme, pe cure shal longer be taried. fforso3pe when 8 pou seest, in pe second day or pe prid, pe blode wele staunched, pan take pe 3olke of a raw ey, and wip oile roset or of camomille, or wip sanguis veneris, or, pise defaiyling, distempre it wip comon oile, and put it in a 12 littel bleddre, and wip anastar of tree ich day but oones be it 3etted into pe lure, so pat pe wounde be filled perof. And afterward put abouve lynnen stupe3 kutted smal wip shere3, and abouve pe stupes a lynnen cloute. 16 And pan be it bounden as it pertene3p, and lat it so lye vnto pe morne. And pis cure ow to be kepte by 8 or 9 dayes; whiche, forso3pe, y-fulfilled, panne owe pe leche to putte in pe kuttyng of my poudre pat I, Io[h]n Arderne, 20 made, whiche I called 'puluer sine pari,' an[d] on frenssh, 'poudre saun3 pere.' I wist neuer, forso3pe, ne knew poudre like to it, Of whiche it shal be seid afterward in his place.1 Aboue pe poudre, forso3p, put coton or stupe3 24 and bynd it. ¶ And so by tuo hole natural daies be it no3t moued, bot if voydyng of pe wombe make it2; bot warne pe lech pe pacient that he dispowe hym so pat he remoue no3t pe medycyne in any maner in als-mich as 28 he may abstene. Elle3 pe fruyte and pe vertue with pe effecte of the medycyne schal be annullid. If pe pacient for-so3p may no3t abstene hym fro pe pryue *In pe mornyng be it clen5ed with hate watre and a sponge 32 and be it dryng and eft sone3 pe putte in of pe forseid poudre, And be it ordeyned as on pe day afore. And jitte be he comaunderd for to abstene as afore, pat if he do no3t eft-sone3 pe prid tyme be it ordeyned with pe 36 same poudre as afore, And jitte he be amonysched to abstine. ¶¶ Afterward wheber he abstene or not, pe place wele yclensed and dried, be pe lure enoynted with

1 The MS. Sloane 6 is again defective, and the missing folios are again supplied from Sloane MS. 277.
The After-treatment of a Fistula Operation.

pe fynger dipped in vnguento viridi hard molten in ane ostree schell att pe fyre. And on ich aside about the wounde and within the lure and where-so-cuer he seep

4 pe skynne flayne. ¶ For why; pis enoyntment dope away alle smertyng and flyeng.1 And pis enoyntment is called Salus populi, pe making of which shal be schewed afterward. ¶ Which enoynted, be per setted in as by-

8 fore with a nastare of tree of pe 3olke of an ey and oile. And as it is seid in pe place afore, be it reparaled in al pings, renewyng everyday one3 first with pe forseid oyntment molten in a schell. And be per sette in with

12 a nastare of tree oile with an ey. ¶ And pis wirchynge be continued by 9 daies at the lest. ¶ About the twenty day, forsoth, or 24 or 26, eft-sone; if pou see ned, pan it is gode past pou putte bisily within pe lure of poudre sine pari, and fille pe place of pe fistule within and without and as it is seid be it redied.2 ¶ When forso

pe wonde is removed . eft-sone: as it is seid afore be it wasched and dried and be it anoynted about with Salus populi And after be caste in by a nastare oyle and pe 3olke of ane ey. And, if pe pacient may abstene hym fro pe pryue, be it n3t removed by two daies. *Elle3 forso when it is nede be it removed. And considere pe lech

24 bisily pe wounde ymundified if it be welle tretable and with-out hardnes and bolnyng and yuel colour: and som what for to cese pe superfly moistnes which pe wonde sent out first. pan witte pe lech pat at pe next he may

28 putte to cicatrizaties as bene pise, Puluer of alum 3ucarin combust, ‘bole armenic,’ sanguis draconis, Aloe, mirra, sarcocolla, meele of barly and of beene, puluer of galle; and psidie3 and puluer tanny, gummy arabic, terra sigillata, &c. ¶ Suppose nost pe lech pat it byhoue him to hauve in one receyte al thise forseid togidre for pai ar sette here togidre. Bot it is to vnderstand pat pai ar named here togidre pat a lech know al to be of

36 pe same vertu in regeneration of flesch an[d] cicatrizacione and pat pai bene al stiptik. And to pise may be added ceruse and litarge of gold and of siluer. ¶ Iff pe lech want any of pem take of pe toper pat he may fynde,

40 For noupter it byhoue here ne in none oper place, pat
Treatment of a Fistula Operation in its final stages.

al pings named pat hap pe same vertue be putte in every confection; bot tuo, or thre, sufficet als mich as alle. ¶ Tak per-for pe lech of pise forseid, tuo, or thre, or foure and medle pam with pe 30k of a raw ey, a little 4 oile of lynsede putte to, if it be hadde, or of sanguis veneris or of melle rosat', and with soft stupe3 of lyne kutte small or with coton. be it putt warly in the wounde, For whi; it cleneth pe wounde and helep and dryep it wele 8 * for certayne. ¶ Or pou may put to common vnguentum album pat apotecharie3 makep, pis nepperlesse yknown wen afore1 pat pou ow to medle per-with poudre of bole armenic' and sanguis dragonis, if pou haue it, and oile 12 roset with watre of rose in which be resolued gumme arabic, and b̄ it wele ynedled togidre and perof be putte every day in pe wounde and about pe wounde with coton. And for certayn it heleth wele no3t only 16 per bot in every place of pe body. And pis oyntment wold I neuer want and I calle it vnguentum arabicum of gumme arabic pat entrep perin and pan schal it be of rede colour. ¶ And witte pou pat with pis 20 oyntment without any oper medicine, outtake salus popali pou may finaly hele pe wounde of pe fistule, if per be in it no ded fleschi, no holle cue, or bolnyng, or hardne3, or blones, or rednes, or any oper instans pat may be-falle.2 24 ¶ pat if per be-falle any of pise accidente3 why pe wounde may no3t perfitely be soued be per put in of puluis sine pari and it schal bryng in pe desired effecte. ¶ And pis schal be to pe pe tokne of perite curyng when 28 pou see3 pe linne cloute3 putte to with pe medicyne3 to be drye when pou remoue3 pam. And in-als-mych as pai ar more drye in-so-mych pai ar pe better. ¶ And pis sufficet of pe kuttyng of pe fistule and of the 32 curyng of it. by po pings pat thur3 pe bisines of a gode lech and a witty may make pe forseid werk more.3

Of a-noper maner wirchyng in pe same fis-tule and pe cure wip diuere exemple3.

If it by falle forso̅p pat pe fistule be depe and hau grete distance atuix pe hole of pe fistule and pe lure.
Other methods of treating a Fistula.

29

Or if the patient be ferdful for to suffer kuttyng. Or for oper notable cause3 being per, pan may the leche with kuttyng of the prede ydrawen thur; the middle of the hole of the fistule and the lure kutte the flesch, and that availep even to kuttyng with iren, outtake that it askep a longer tymne of curyng. For why; bof-al it be bounden rišt strictly at pe first tymne setcunna currente infundatur Antfice tareligneo knot. "

The details of treatment by ligature.

1Prosecuta ergo tali cura et innexione debito modo facts/

2 Cum nodo currente Anglice "large knot" vel "slippery knot."

3 et cum nastare ligneo infundatur in anum de vitello ovi crudo cum oleo ros. mistum.

16 bedde; or stande he or go he by pre ourer; or 5, or 6, vnto that pe payne ycaused of pe byndying cese somwhat. And wheper pe akyng cese at pe forseid tymre or not, putte the patient on a bedde and with a naister of tree 20 putte into the lure of the zolk of a raw ey, meddled with oile of rose leuke,8 and be the lure wele enoyntid 4 *of the same withouteforpe. And so wipoute puttyng atuix of any-j-ing late it aloon by a ništ; At morne, 24 forsope, bfore that patient go to priue, be settid into the lure by a nastre som oyle, what-so plesse to pe, that patient may so moche more lişt ese hym. Witte pou that pus ow pou to chaufe the zolk of an ey 28 with oyle. Take that nastare wip that forseid medicyne putte in the bledder, and the bledder putte in some vessell wip hote water, that the medicyne may be chaufed by the hete of the water; for why; hote j-ing esep better 32 be akyng. Pan afore the patient go to the priue, take the leche the forseid prede in the lure, and be the vitter knotte loused, and afir be the prede more strongly constreyned if it may wipout anguissh of the patient. 36 Elleñ, forsope, be it bounden wip tuo knottis or pre vnhouseable, and be the heuede; of the prede; kutte away so nere the knotte pat pai may not; be perceyued of the patient or of oper men. And witte pou that the leche

4 Sloane 6, leaf 148, continues.
Prescriptions for some good Clysters.

The leech to keep a stock of ligature material, and to be very careful to keep his methods secret.

shuld haue euermore prede of white silke, small and strong; if he haue nost, forsope, pan take he strong prede of lyne or of tuyne. And in no maner after his miȝt shewe he nost his wyrkyng, nonper in kutting ne wip 4 prede byndyng, pat his werke be perceyued of strange men, pat his cure be nost little sette by, or pat any oþer witty man perceyuyng his werk mow vsurpe it to hymself; for þus did I, perfore wake 3e, for he þat is warned 8 aforne is nost bigiled. It byhoueþ a leche vse many cauteleþ, pat he adorne1 his faculte, whiche I may nost note to þe laste. It seemeþ, forsope, vnworþi for to vse wele þingis y-giffe þat kan nost gette hym mo 12 þingis. Þerfore when þe pacient has clensed his wombe, be he putte vpon a bedde, and be his lure wele clensed and wyped wip hote watre and wip a sponge. Aftirward be it enyonted wip þi fynger atuix þe 16 buttokeþ and on ich aside about þe lure wip Salus populi hette in an ostree shell. Aftirward be þer zetted in by a nastare þe 30lk of an ey as aboue wip oyle. Aftirward be þer putte aboue siche ane Emplastre: 20 Recipe—þe Iuyse of smalache or merch, wormode, Molayne, walworte, Spargue, waybrede, Mugworte, auance, petite consoude, wodebynde. Of alle þe pise herbes, if þou may haue þam, take even porcion, outtake of wodebynde, 24 of whiche, if it may be hadde, be taken þe triple or quadruple. If al, forsope, may not be hadde, take þe toþer þat þou may haue, and namely þe þre first named wip wodebynd if þou may haue it. The con-28 feccion of þis:—Take þe Iuse of þe herbes, and be it medled wip als mich of wele clarified honye, al-wise mouyng on an esy fire, and boile tham so long vnto þat þe watrynes of þe Iuyse be somewhat þikned; whiche, 32 y-take of þe fire and keled, kepe it in a gode potte.2 It may laste al one ʒere or tuo; þerfore when þou wilt þe þerof, take of it als mich as it is nede, and putte þerto als mich of whites of eiren, wele y-bette and scomed,3 and 36 moue þam togider. Aftir be þer put to þam of subtile mele of whete als moche as sufficþ, and medle þam wele to-gidro; þam putte * to a little oyle of olyue, or of fressh buttre scomed at þe fire, wip als mich virgin wax 40

1 ut facultatem suam decoret.

A prescription for a good clyster,

and another for a plaster.

[* leaf 148, back]
Preparation of Diaflosmus and Tupsimel.

togidre dissolved at þe fire by it self; ðan first putte aboue þe iuse to þe fire wip hony and white of eyren, and moue þam all wayse wip a sklyse\textsuperscript{1} pat þai cleue not to þe panne. When forsøpe it is wele hote but not wele y-sopen, be þe wax molten wip oile or buttre, as it is seyde aboue; whiche y-molten and þe forseid pingis beyng hote— þat is to seye þe hony, þe iuse, and þe 8 white of eyren— be þai setted togidre, and so euermore mouyng strongly wip a spatour, seþe þam on a softe fyre vnto þey be made oon body: whiche y-do, sette it of þe fire, and it beyng hote, putte to of terebentyne als 12 moche as sufficeþ and moue it strongly wip a spature vnto þat þe terebentyne be droken in. And if it be nede for to chaufe it more for þe terebentyne, loke þat it suffre nøzt mych hete, for in seþing loseþ terebentyne 16 his myȝtes. þise y-do, be it yputte in a box and y-kepte to vse. Take of þis and wip a spatour or with þi þombe strech it vpon clene lyn stupleþ and softe, and put it vpon þe lure, and aboue put a lyn cloute and 20 bynde it, as it is seyde, in þe cure of cuttyng. þis emplastre, forsoþe, is called 'diaflosmus,' for molayne þat is called flosmus. And not oonly it availeþ in þis forseid cure but also in cuttyng of þe fistule; for why; 24 it heleþ wele alle woundes, þof-al þai be horrible, & also bolnyngis in woundez and in brissures; and it sesþe wele þe akyngis of woundes and of brusours. And it esþe wele þe akyngis and þe bolnyngis of ioyntures; 28 þis, forsoþe, haue I ful ofte proued. I sey, forsoþe, þat þis emplastre ì-had, it is nøzt nede in þe forseid caseþ to renne to oþer medicynes. And witte þou þat þer is a naturel vertu in walwort þat moste wele re- 32 streynþeþ blode of woundes, and akyng and bolnyng of woundes and of al membreþ it dop best away. Witte þou þat pat confeccion aboue þat receyueþ Smalache, wormode, molayne, sparge, &c, wip clarified hony sopen 36 togidre at þe fire and kept by itself in a vessell is called 'Tapsimel.' When, forsoþe, þer is added perto white of eiren and oyle, wip wax and whete floure and terebentyne, and ar sopen togidre, þan it is called 'diaflosmus.' 40 And þus ow þam to be proporcioned:—Recipe. tapsimel,
white of eiren—ana 3 iij; whete flour 3 iij; oyle, wax—
an 3 iij; terbentyn 3 iij. And witte þou þat if in þe
tyme of þe makyng of Tapsimel may be founden a litel
pety morel 1 whiche bereþ white flourvs and blak grapes or 4
berieþ, it shuld for certayn make rïȝt noble þe emplastre
diaflösmus. And petite morel is called in fflaundres
‘Naghtstach.’ 2 And witte þou þat þe iuse of it doþe
best awey þe pustules in childres 3 mouþes.

If, forsope, þer be many holes persed to-gidre, þan owe
þe leche als sone as he may for anguissli of þe pacient,
after þe reperacion of þe first wounde, as it is seid afore, for
to knytt þip a þrede, as it is seyde afore, þe topër holes 12
strongly. Or, if he may, þat is better þat þey be kutte
al fro oon hole to an-oþer, acu rostrata, þe snowted
nedle y-putte in þe hole, or som lynne tent, kutte þam
to þe grounde wip a rasour or wip a launcete. Whiche 16
holes, *forsope, y-brouȝt into oon, be þe wounde als
soon y-filled of puluer sine pari; Aboue the poudre, forsope,
I putte stupes kutte small, or coton, or carpe of
lynnen cloþe. Aftir putte aboue þe forseid emplastre 20
diaflösmus, and be it bounden as it is seid, and ich day
oonþ reperailed. I sawe a man of Northamptoun 4 þat
had þre holes in þe lefte buttok, and þre in þe
testicleþ codde, and al persed fro oon to anoþer by þe 24
middeþ of longaon; whom I cured wip cuttyng of al þe
holes at oon tyme, of longaon as wele as of oþer. Of þe
kuttyng, forsope, of longaon, blode went strongly out,
for þe fistule was rïȝt depe; wherefore þe pacient 28
swowned; perfoure I putte to a sponge wette in cold watir
and receyued þe blode. Aftirward I put in þe kuttyng
of longaon restrictyues of blode, of whiche it is seid
aboue, and a gode sponge y-wette in cold watre. I made 32
þe pacient for to sitte in a chayer, and als soon þe blod
was cessed. And aftir refetynge of mete and drink, he went
into his bedde and sleped wele all þe niȝt, wipoute
goynge out of blode. In þe morne, forsope, he had hym 36
wele; þe seconde day, forsope, after þe kuttyng I
filled all þe woundes of puluer sine pari, and as it
is seid afore in þell þingis, with oyle and an ey and
salus populi and diaflösmus I helid hym finaly wip 40
in 14 wekes. Whiche, forsope, as he seid, he vnder-
3de pe cure of menye leches, And suffred it ten 3ere.
And witte pou pat I saw neuer man vnder my
4 hand suffre swouynyng, outake hym pis; he was forsope
corpulent and walke of hert, but neperlesse aboute pe
fourty day after pe kuttyng he rode. I heled anoiper
man pat had a fistule in pe same maner in all pingis,
8 outake pat longaon was no3t persed; whom I cured wip
kuttyng in pe same maner as it is seid of pe first. I
haue sene som men hauyng oon hole aloon ni; pe lure
pat persed no3t pe longaon, whom I heled wip puluer
12 sine pari finaly; but for pe moupe of pe vicere was
ouver streit, first I put aboue of vnguento ruptorio of calce
viue & sape for to large pe moupe of the fistule; of whiche
it shal be treted afterward among opir confeeccions. I haue
16 sene som men haue tuo holes byside pe lure, of whiche oon
persed pe longaon and pe toper persed in no place, but it
was oonly symple by itsefl in pe flesshe, hauyng no pas-
yng to pe tother hole. Of whiche was such a cure:—The
20 hole nerre pe lure was cured wip kuttyng or byndyng;
pe toper, forsope, wip poudre sine pare y-put in and
diaflosmo, and oon emplastre pat is called Neyrbone put
aboue, whoes confeeccion shal be shewed afterwarde, I saw
24 also, and, oure lord beyng mene, I heled perfitaly a man
pat had fistula in ano on pe ri3t side and on pe lefte
side; whiche, forsope, had on pe lefte buttok 8 holes, and
pe in pe ri3t buttok; and wipin was longaon persed
28 toward pe ri3t side oonly. But neperlesse all pe holes of
ai3er party of pe lure answered togidre in pe grounde
pat was proued pus. I toke a siyring of siluer and a
blessly y-bounden aboute full of sanguis veneris, and pe
32 siyring y-putte in pur3 oon hole and pe blesdyre com-
pressed wip pe fyngers, pe oile inserettet *went out by al
pe holes togidre on bope sides, and neperlesse pe hole
of longaon answered no3t but to oon hole oonly, and pat
36 in pe ri3t buttok; pe sopefastnes of whiche piping was
proued wip pe instrument pat is callid sequare me, and
wip acu rostrata, wip ful grete hardnes and bisynes;
pe cure of whiche was suche: first euery day in pe
40 lefte buttok pur3 oon of pe holes I setted in sanguis
ARDERNE.

[1 Qui vero, ut dixit, viginti mediet corum curam subegit.]

Another case.

Cases of fistula with many openings.

A method to discover the real fistula when there are many external openings.

[* leaf 149, back]
The Cure of Blind Internal Fistula.

Treatment by tents.

Veneris wip pe forseid siring and bledder; whiche y-do, I putte in tuo tentes or pre, or lard of pork or swyne in pe larger holes; after pat pe depnes of pe fistules asked, pe heuedes, forsope, of pe tentes war tokned with 4 predes drawen purj pe middes wip a nedell, pat pe tentes shuld noxt be drowned in pe grounde of pe fistules when pe tentes war put in. And I putte aboue pe emplastre pat is called Neyrbon streechid vpon lynne 8 cloutes, and dewly y-bunden aboute pe lendes wip a girdill and cloutes y-shapen as it is seid afore. I lefte it in pece vnto pe morne. At morne, forsope, pe emplastre removed, per appered aboue pe emplastre ful putrid 12 quitour in superfliue quantite. Eftsones in pe seconde day I repaailled it in al pingis as in pe firste day, and it bifell as in pe firste day; and so it continued almost by a monep. When pe quitour, perfore, bigynne to lessen 16 somwhat, and the bolnyng somwhat to cese, and pe colour and pe substaunce of pe skynne for to turne to his owne naturel habitude, pan at pe first turned I to pe principale cure of pe fistule with persyng of longaon, 20 whiche I cured finally wip byndyg of pe prede in pe hole of longaon, pe topær hole3, forsope, beyng bisyde it I cured wip cuttyng and with puluer sine pare. Evemore continuyng pe cure wip pe sirysng in pe lefte side, and 24 wip teutes als long as pay wolde entre in, and pe emplastre Neyrbon y-putte aboue, and salus populi and vn-guento arabico, vnto a loucable ende wip goddes help aboute half a3ere I cured hym, and lefte hym in pece. Also per 28 bene som men pat hap fistules noxt apperyng outward, but pay putte out miche putred & watrye humour, and som-tyme clere blode, and somtyme blode y-medled wip quitour. And pai disese myche pe pacientes and feblep 32 pan. And oft-tymes suche maner sikenes bene toward pe rigbone of pe bak ni3 pe lure, pat pay may be feled wip a fyngar. But wher per pay may be feled or noxt be per done suche a cure wip whiche I haue cured many 36 men. Be pe pacient putte vpon a bedde wyde opne agaynese a wyndowe, lijt shynynge, and pe legs y-raised vp and wip a towel y-hungen or wip a corde ordeyned to pis werk; whiche y-do, be pe lure y-opned wip 40
Sequelæ of Blind Fistula.

35

tonges so y-shape pat when pe vtward endes bene streyneyd togidre pe inner endes be opned & agaynward.

Or if pe leche kanne ymagyne more couenable instru-

momentis to pe forseid werk to be done, for so moche loued be god pat streyngpes mannes witte in godes. pe lure, forsope, y-opened, and pe sikenes bisily y-sene, be pe hole of pe sikenes y-filled wip puluer sine pare, and

8 coton y-putte aboue; be pe tonges warly drawen out pat pai spil not pe poudre, or pat pei hurt not pe pacient. Whiche y-drawn out, and pe legges laten doun, late pe pacient long reste or pat he go, pat pe poudre be *not pe

12 letted for to go; and abide it so stille vnto pat pe pacient clense his wombe; and if pe pacient may abstene hymself fro pe pryue by two dayes, it war full necessary to hym. When pe pacient, forsope, ow to be reparaled, pe

16 pan be pe lure wasshen and dried; whiche y-wasshen, be per jette in of a 30lk of an ey wip sanguis veneris to esyng of pe ake pat come of puluer sine pare, and to pe clensyng of pe vuler of flesh mortifid by pe forseid poudre. And pis cure continue pe leche by fife dayes or mo, pat is to sey of pe 30lk and of sanguis veneris, vnto pat he se pe pacient wele alegedde 1 of pe first akyng. Whiche y-do, pan owe pe leche in pe best maner pat he may for to opne pe lure and bisily biholde wipin, and considere if pe sikenes be mortifid; whiche is known if pat pe vuler seme depper pan it was sene afore pe puttyng in of pe poudre, and also by oper

20 tokens pe a gode leche fyndep more exparte of long exercise. In pis perfore to be yknowen be not pe leche slowe; for why; per shal folow not litle louyng perof. perfore if it be not mortifid be it eftsones filled of puluer sine pare, and be it sewed 2 in all pingis as it is seid afore, wip pe 30lk of an ey, & wip sanguis veneris, vnto pat he se eftse-sones pe pacient wele aleged, as it is seid afore. When, forsope, he trowepe pat it is

28 mortifid, pan it is to turne agayne to anoper cure, pat is to sey pat he take pe 30lke of an ey to whiche be added pe half parte of tapsimell, and als miche as sufficep of poudre of alumme jucaryne y-brent. And be it so

32 made pat it may be setted in by a Nastar of tree; and

but he is not wedded to it.

After-treatment.

Examine for gangrene.

Treatment for gangrenous inflammation of rectum.
Treatment of Ulceration of the Rectum.

pis cure be continued al-only by pre or foure dayes: pe fourpe, forsope, or pe fifth day after pis medicyne done to, be pe ulcer reparaled wip pe 30lk of an ey and sanguis veneris pre or foure dayes continued. And so 4 owe pe leche for to chaunge his hande fro oon medycyne to another, vnto pat he se pe superfliue moistene; firste goyng out for to cesse; pat is tokne of cure or help beyng nige. Pan, forsope, may he with vnguento arabico and 8 salus populi finaly sped pe forseid cure aboute four & twenty wekes, or more or lesse, aftir pat pe pacient be obedient and bisy; for why; gret sped of werk standeth in pe paciens and bisynes of pe pacient. And it is to witte pat in all ulcere; beyng wipin pe lure, or moiste ragadiis puttyng out quiotour or blode, pis I see pat pe ulcerbe nonstubones, i.e. owles, of whiche it shall be seid aftirward, for pai be al incurable: pat if a leche may 16 nonstop wipoute grete anguissi, als wele of hymself as of pe pacient, opne pe lure of pe pacient wip tonges, as it is seide afore, pan owe pe leche oonly putte in of tapsimel and puluer sine pare medled togidre in suche piknes pat it may be setted in by a nastare of tree. For why; pis medicyne mortifepe wele and clensep putred flesh in an ulcere. But witte pou pat euermore aftir pe settyng in of tapsimel wip pe forseid poudre, pou ow in pe nexte 24 reparalyng for to sette in wip a nastare of tre of pe 30lk of an ey wip sanguis veneris or oyle rosette, or wip comow oile if pe forsaed wante. And pis cure be continued wipoute leffyng *by pre or foure dayes. It 28 spedep nonst, forsope, pat medicynes bryngyng in akeng be to moche vsed or haunted, as is tapsimel wip puluer sine pare. Neperlesse tapsimel wipout puluer sine pare, wip pe 30lk of an ey and wip poudre of bole amoronic 32 ful smal y-broke and medled wip oile of lynsed togidre, oyle of rose added to, or of violettis, or of sanguis veneris if it be had redy, And settet in wip Nastare of tre, helep wele ulceres, ragadyes, and excoriacioes or fleyngis wipin 36

2 Nota de ulceribus infra anum existentibus. Et notandum quod in omnibus ulceribus infra anum existentibus, vel rhagadiis humidis saniem emittentibus vel sanguinem, hoc dico, quod ulceræ non sunt bubones, de quibus inferius suo loco dictetur; Bubones namque sunt omnes incurables.
Cancer of the Rectum.

37

pe lure; pis supposed after pe sleyng of flessh putred, wip enoynytng of salus populi, pat availeth beste for certeyn in ever cause wipin pe lure and wipoute.

4 Of bubo with-in pe lure, and the impossibilitie or mych hardnes of pe cure of it.

6. [B] ubo is ane aposteme bredyng wipin pe lure in pe longaon wip grete hardnes but litte akyng. pis I sey 8 byfore his vleracion pat is nopting elles pan a hidde cankere, pat may nozt in pe bigynnyng of it be known by pe sijt of pe eije, for it is hid al wipin pe lure; And prefere it is callid bubo, for as bubo, i.e. an owle, is 12 a best dwellyng in hideles so pis sikenes lurkep wipin pe lure in pe bikynnyng, but after processe of tyme it vlerate, & fretyng pe lure gope out. And ofte-tyme it fretip and wasteth all pe circumference of it, so 16 pat pe feces of egestiones gope out continuumely vnto pe deth, pat it may neuer be cured wip mannes cure but if it plese god, pat made man of nozt, for to help wip his vnspektable vertu. Whiche, forsope, is 20 knozen pus: Putte pe leche his fynder into pe lure of pe pacient, and if he fynde wipin pe lure one hard ping as a stone, somtyme on pe to party al-only, som tyme of bope, so pat it lette pe pacient for to haue 24 egestion, it is bubo for certayn. Signes, forsope, of his vleracion bene pise: pe pacient may nozt abstene hym fro pe pryné for akyng & prikkyng, and pat twyse or prise wipin ane houre; and per gope quitour out 28 fer-of as it war medled wip watyre blode and stykkyng. To pat also wee vakunyng leches, as pe pacient, 4 trowep pat pey haue pe dissenterie, pat is pe blody fluxe, when trewly it is nozt. Dissenterie is euermore wip 32 fluxe of pe wombe, but bubo gope out hard egsetions, and som tyme pey may nozt go out for streytnes of pe bubon, but pey ar constreyned wipin pe lure streitly, so pat pey may be felol wip pe fynger and y-drawe out. And 36 in pis cas availep pe myche clisteries lenitius of watre of decccion of whete brenne 5 wip oyle or butter, or wip

---

1. Hoc superposito post mortificationem putridae carnis.
2. Bubo est animal latebras colens.
3. "et aliquando sepultus," aids the Latin text.
4. Tam mediembali ignari, quam patientis.
5. lenitiva ex aqua decocer furfuris triturati.

---

Cancer of the rectum.

The diagnosis.
The signs
The way to distinguish between cancer and dysentery.

often mistaken for dysentery.
The course run by Cancer of the Rectum.
symple decocccion of branne wipoute medlyng of any oper ping. Neperlesse vnkunyng leches ministrep vnto suche restrictiues medicynes of dissenterie, of bole, and sang draconi, mastik, coriandre, sumac, mirtilles, 4 harde 3olkis of eyren, gret wyne, and suche oper pat availep to restreyng of flux of pe wombe, as pou shalt mowe fynde in lilio1 medicyne, capito "de fluxu ventris." And how moche more pat pai giffe restrictiues, 8 so moche more pai noye to pe forseid in constipand, i.[e.] costuyenes, and in hardenand pe squilulam2; pat I haue oftymes bene experte of, And I haue lerned it in experience in whiche I was not bigiled: ffor why; 12 constrictiues y-lefte als wele in diete as in pe forseid medicynes I esed mich wip vse *of clisterie3 of branne symple or of malue3 and branne wipoute oyle or butter or any fatnes; ffor why; al fatte pingis and oile pingis 16 norisshep pe cancre and fedip it. And it is to witte pat pise bene pe accidentes of pam pat lap bubow) in pe lure: pai may ete and drynk and go, and somwhat sitte and somwhat slepe; pai be menely hungry and 20 prifty in mete vnto pe ende; pai may no3 abstene pam fro pe priuè. And ofte tyme3 comep perisshyng to pam aboute autumpne or heruest; and it nei3hyng nere, pay bigynne for to haue febres as it war a softe febre; 24 and pai lose as it war pai appetite; pai bigynne for to lope ale and pai conaite wyne; pai ete ych day lesse and lesse; pai slepe vnesely; pai ar made heuy als wele in mynde as in body; and pe fallynge doune nei3hyng 28 nere, pai are made feble, and pai halde continually pai bodde, and pay couayte watre aboue all pingis. pise perfore y-sene, depe is in pe zatis.3 Neperlesse pai may speke & raise pamselv vp and moue almost to pe 32 breping out of pe spirit. perfore wake 3e pat 3e putte no3 zoure hand to pis but in giffyng clisteries, as it is seid afore; whiche alegepe mych pe forseid pacientes, as I haue be experte, and makep euermore pronosticacion 36 to pam or to pai frendes als wele de dep as of vneur-ablenes. Sich pronosticacion, forsope, shal worshippe pe bisynes of pe leche: perfore fliep auarine and abstene zow fro false hyhestis. Witte pou pat pe fynger y-putte 40
Cancer of the Rectum incurable.

into the lure of hym pat has the dissenterye, he shal fele
noping in pe longaon but to pe maner of ooper hole
menne. But in the lure of pam pat hap pe bubow
shall be feled a bolnyng riȝt hard, as if per war an ey of
ane henne or of a gose. But neperlesse pe putrede,
\[\text{f} \text{rotenne} \], and pe blode pat gope out of bope bene
mych liche; pat is pe quitour is citryne or yellow and
blo or wanne medled wip warly blode wip gret stynt,
and it gope out to pe quantite of o sponeful or of tuo
wipout medlyng of egestion, and som-tyme wip egestion.
But in dissenterie he shal fele fretyng about pe nauyle
and pe flanke; in bubon, forsope, noȝt so; but akynge,
stirryng, and prikkyng, and tenasmon; pat is, appetite
of egestion. I se oon of Northampton-shire whos lure
was frete on cuery party, so pat he miȝt wipholde noping
of pe feces of egestions but pe grettèst; for why; his
lure was euermore stopped with a grete towell of lynne
clope; but neperlesse pe binnen egestions went
continually, so pat his cletes about his buttokes war
euermore moyste; and pe towel y-drawn out, in pe
stede of pe lure was a rounde hole by whiche an ey of a
dukke miȝt liȝtly be putte in, and I miȝt se ferre into
his wombe. Whiche died after-ward of pe forseid infirmit;
for why; he was vncurable, for pe moupe of pe lure
wip pe lacertes and pe synowes speryng and opynynge pe
lure was vtterly gnauen away.\(^1\) And forpy \(^2\) in suche like
be it done avisily pat conaitise bryng noȝt forpe blame
to pe leche. I saw neuer ne I hard noȝt any man pat
miȝt be cured of pe bubon, but I haue knownen many
pat defailep of pe forseid sikenes. Also I haue sene
som haunyaing a ful gret breynnynge aboute pe lure wipout,
and vntholeful smertyng \(^3\) wip ronklyng of pe skynne
aboute pe lure closed to pe * maner of a purse, wherfore
pe pacientes miȝt noȝt wele sitte, ne ligge, ne stonde euen,
ne fynde reste in no place, but euermore monyng and
stirryng pamself as it war wode men. And superfle
watrenes swette out fro pe place pat was wonte for to
file many lynnen cletes putte atwix. To whiche sikenes
availep mich colde pingis in power but hote in dede
y-putte to, as bene aysel,\(^4\) vinegre, hote by itself or wip

1 quod ori-
ficium lune
cum lacertis
et nervis
Luram
clandantif-
bus et
asperantibus
ominis cor-
rodeantur,
2 ideirco.
3 pruriginem
intolerab-
ilem.
4 acetum.

\(^1\) A advanced
case of
cancer of the
rectum.

\(^2\) Cancer of
the rectum
incurable.

\(^3\) Palliative
methods to
be adopted.

\(^4\) Make a
rectal exam-
ination to
distinguish
between
cancer and
disenterie.
Iuyse of rubarbe, or plantayne, or virga pastoris, or of oper cold pungis in power. But for pat ofte-tymes suche herbes may nost be had redy, pan it is to flye to oper remedies; pat is to sey, Take pe raw zolk of an ey and medle it wele wip pe poudre of bole armenice broken ful smal, or ceruse, or bope, and anoynit it abone pe sore wip a penne or feper or wip a spatule; pis, forsophe, sesep pe brennyng and pe akyng, and be pis of tymes done agayn3. Also in euery remouyng it availep mich pat pe yuel or sore be wele fomented or soked wip vinegre and watre y-medled togidre and chaufed; ffor why; pis greetly euaporeth noyful hete. And aftir pe fomentyn, pe place wele y-dried, be it reparaled as it is seid afore, wip pe zolk of an ey and bole. When pe cusomable watrynes, forsophe, is sene to cese, and pe pacient feleb as it war vnssufferable ychyng, pan be per putte to euery day oones aue oyntement made of blakke sope and poudre of bole and sulphur and frankensence ymedled to-gidre. And pis oynment shal drie, and shal make skales to rise fro pe sore; whiche y-sene, be pe lure anoyned als wele wipin as wipout wip vnguentum album sharped wip bole and wip quik-siluer, and pis shal cese pe hete and it shal cicatrisē pe sleeng.1 And if it bene anoyned wip salus populi, it profitep mych.24

At pe last, forsophe, agayn3 pe disesyng ychyng be it anoyned wip tapsimel, In whiche be puluere3 of alume ecureine brent, of attrament, and of vitriol; pis, forsophe, dope heste away ychyng for certayn, als wele wipin pe lure as wipoute. Or if you haue noxt redy pe forseid tapsimell, be pe same done wip scomed hony, and pe ferseid pulueres medled per-to. Or per may be made a medycyne to pe manner of pe forseid tapsimel of pe Iuyse of celidone and scomed hony, to pe whiche pe forseid puluere3 ymedled, I haue proued pat it dope heste away ychyng.2 Also pe Iuyse of celidone y-medled wip vinegre and warmed at pe fire, and wip a fether anoyunted up pe forseid sore, pat is to sey in pe bigynnyng of pe sikenes, it quenchip wele pewickid hete and keped fro recidination,3 pat is fallyng agayne. And it quenchip wele herisiptam, pat is wilde fir

1 et hoc calorem sedabit et escoriationem cicatrisabit.
2 Pruritus
3 bene calorem noxtum extinguit et a recidinatione preservit.
or few sawage in every place of the body. And the same
dop leuke vinegar put above by itself; Or vnguement album sharped wip quiesiuer. Also oile of citonior:
curep he herisiple and wickid vlcere. Also he Iuyse of
celidone, imbied in a sponge or in lynne clopes, and
y-putte leuke to the front and to the temples, it cesep
pe akying of pe heued. And pis I proued oftymes in
8 the second pestilence. the come a man fro Burdeux in
Gascon vnto Newerke, pat had one horrible sore, pat is
to sey peces or gobettis of rede fleshe and rawe in
parties lyngynge doyne to the lengpe of ane yneh. And
12 pai occupied bope his buttokkes on aiper party of the lure
to the Suche of pre fyngers; and per went out ther-of
ri$t mich watrinesse and some-tyme blode wip gret
hete and stynk, so pat his buttokkes war cunterijid;
16 and the grew to the liknes of the womb of a fyssh pat is
seid creuyse or loster when he sperme or friep. And
those superfluities partyngly grew in the hole skynne;
and when the war mortified euen to the rotes, per
20 appered holes fro whens the went out. I mortified,
forsoe, the superfluities wip a poudre pat is called
Puluer greke, the confection of the whiche shal shewe
after. And for pat the mich watrynes goyng out in
24 the bigynnynge overcome the foreseid poudre, perfore I
putte above, aftar the puttyng of the poudre greke, of the
moste subtile mele of barly abundandy, pat is called
alita, aboue the poudre greke; and so I quenched the
28 foreseid superfluities wipin the or four puttyng to, so
pat pai began to dry and to welk and fall away.
Puluer grek, forsoe, is ri$t desiccatiue and wele cleuyng to;
and no$t oonly it restreytheneth wele watry moistenes
32 but also blode, and it mortifiep the curable cancer and
the blody fike in every place. A man had vpon his
buttok a blody fyk puttyng out blode and somtyme
quitour, and it was like to a Mulbery; to the whiche I
36 putte aboue puluer grek by oon nijt, and in the mornyn
I pulled out ri$t ligtly wip my fyngers the fike half
mortified; the whiche y-drawe out, blak blode went out
after. After a litel goyng of the blode, forsoe, I putte
40 to puluer grek, and the blode was restreyne. Aboue the
poudre, forsope, coton y-put atuyx, I-putte abone þe emplastre Nerbon vpon a lyn cloute, to kepe þe poudre þat it shulde noþt falle away. And þus, þis forseid cure continued, he was hole wipin a shorte tyme.

Of fistules in þe fyngers, and hardnes of cure of it.

7. [I] haue sene oft-tymes þe fistule be in þe fyngers and in þe pombes, als wele of men as of wymmen; als 8 wele of zong men as of olde men; þe cure of which many men knowe þoþt: þfor why; it bredeþ oft-tyme in þe fynger or þe pombe of som men in þe extremitë of þe flesshynes mortifying al þe ouermore iuncture, 12 þat is þe fleshe wip þe bone. And somtyme it bredip in þe middes iuncture, and þat is more perilë; and somtyme in þe lawer iuncture by þe hande, and þat is worsë. Neþerlesse þe fistule bredyng in þe extremitë 16 of þe fynger deceyueþ somner þe pacient þan in oþer places; þfor vnkunnyng men scip þat it is þe whitlowe, which þou shalt knowe þus. If þer byfal to any man in þe extremitë of his fynger akynge wip inflacion, and 20 when þat it bristep it makiþ a litel hole, and oute of þat hole þer gop out a little docelle of putrifited fleshe or rede, to þe gretnes of a whene cornë, and þer gop þat little quitour or noon out þerof, þan witte þou þat þer 24 cleneþ a fistule to þe fynger. And wipoute doute if it be wipoute help any long tyme, as by a monëp or fourty dayes, it shal noþt mow be cured wipoute lesyng of þe ouermore iuncture wip þe bone, and perauenture 28 of þe ouermore and þe neþer-more bope; þat I haue oftymes proued. Þfor why; oftymes þe bone of þe fynger is frete or gnawen or it bigynne for to ake, þat is proued þus. Þforsope I haue heled som men þat seid 32 þat þei feled noon yuel but by a fourtniþt; *And when I saw þe forseid tokne of þe fistule, þan al-sone I departed in-als-mych as I myþt þe skyn of þe fynger ript foule wip a rasour and sheres; and þe skynne y-putþ; I fonde 36 al wipin putrefied, and neþerlesse þe fynger was noþt but a litel bolned. And poudre croferoboron y-putte
Their treatment.

The sings not obvious at first.

The dead bone should be removed.

to mundefye pe corruption by al a niȝt, and aboue pe emplastre sanguiboetos. In pe mornynge when pe filpe was dissolved and drawn out, I perceyued pe bone of pe fynger to be tabcface, i.[e.] corrupte, and frete & loused fro pe toper iuncture, and pat was meruaile. And in som men I haue perceyued pe bone corrupte in party and noȝt in all fully; and somtyme two iunctures vtterly mortesied and corrupte. Sfor why; it is certayne pat bones shul noȝt be corrupte wipin a fourtniȝt if pai war vncorrupte afore pat tyme. Pe cure of pe forseid is such: If sich ane yuel or sore come of 12 newe, and he haue had no cure afore, and if ou perceyue pe forseid tokne of fistulacion, pan alsone be pe skyn slayn wip a rasour, as it is seid afore. Aftirward if per be any filpe perin, be pressed out. Aftirward, forsope, 16 bo pe wounde filled of pe puluer creoferoboron; pat y-do, be per putte aboute of the emplastre Sanguiboetos wip stupes, and so be it lefte by oon day and a niȝt hole. Aftirwarde whan ou remoues pe emplastre and hap 20 mundified pe filpe y-fonden, If ou fynde pe bone of it blak and putrefiied in pe hizec party, it bihouep of necessite be drawn out. Or if pe vtter party of pe bone be losed al aboute fro pe flesshe and pe naile, fof-al it 24 be noȝt blak, it bihouep be departed and pat alsone as it may, pat pe bone pat is corrupte aboue infecte noȝt wip his corruption pe bone pat is festned to hym; whiche if it bifal, it bihouep bope be drawn out. Sfor 28 why; a corrupte bone or a losed may noȝt dwelle or abide in pe flesshe, for no cure beyng mene, pat ne it corrumpe ouper pe flesshe or pe synowes. Or pe flesshe shal caste it out when it is in a wounde or in aposteme, or in 32 a cancre or fistule. Pe bone forsope y-drawn out, be pe place y-filled of pe poudre creoferoboron, and aboue pe emplastre Sanguiboetos; and be it lefte per by als long tyme as it is seid afore. Aftir forsope, pe 36 emplastre removed, if ou se pe hole y-clensed wip pe forseid poudre, pan be per putte eftsones of pe forseid emplastre wip pe poudre, renewyng pe emplastro ych day tuyse. And so wip pe forseid emplastre, or wip 40 vnguementum viride lefe noȝt to hele it vnto pe ende. If
Treatment of Fistula in the Fingers.

A means of recognizing the growth of proud flesh.

...per growe, forsope, any superflue fleshe in pe hole, as it fallēp oft tymes, pat þou shalt know þus: pe superflue fleshe bygynne for to growe fro pe bone in middes of pe hole, and noþt fro pe sides of pe flessh. 4 And wipin þre dayes or foure, if it be not mette or agayn-standen it passeþ pe sides of þe gode flessh, for it growþ wip hastines; whiche flessh, forsoþe, may be drawn out in þe bigynnyng wip þe poudre of creofero-8 boron. If it excede in grete quantitiþ, pan it bihouþ for to pute to poudre of arcenek, or ane hote iren. Aftir þþ puttyng to of þþ poudre, or of þþ hote iren, þþr is to be putte-to larde enoynted wip þþ iuse of 12 porres, for to lese *þþ mortified flesshþ; whiche y-leþed, þþ fynger is to be enoynted wip ane oyntment made of sape & byrmston. In þþ hole, forsoþe, be putte vnguen-tum viride vpon a stupe; and euery day be it tuyse re-16 moued, and þþs euermore sewe þþ forseid maner. If þþ bone, forsoþe, of þþ fynger or of þþ pombe be corruppte in party bot noþt leþed fro þþ naile, pan aftir þþ miþþ be þþ corrept shauen away, and þþn be put þþerto licium, 20 þþt is carpe wette, in ane oyntment þþs y-made: Take licium, þþat is þþ iuse of wodbynde, i.[e.] caprifoile, and hony and poudre of white glasse anα; be þþi medled to-gidre and made ane oyntment; þþi oyntment engendrep 24 flessh; it flesþ þþ fistule; it mundifieþ þþ filþþ or putrifaccion of þþ bone. **ffor why; glasse makeþ flessh for to grow vpon þþ bone; hony purgeþ and remouþ þþ styntþ; licium hap vertu for to mundifie þþ filþþ or 28 þþ putrefaccion of þþ bone, and for to hele þþ wonde, and for to sle þþ cancre and þþ fistule. And licium is made þþs: Take þþ leueþ of caprifoile and brisse þþm in a morter, and priste out þþ iuse, and putte in a brasen 32 vessel or of glasse, and drie it at þþ sunne, and kepe it to vse. It is þþ beste medicyne; If þþ fynger, forsoþe, of any man haue be long vnheled of vnwise cure, or of negligence of þþ pacient after þþt þþ bone is take out—36 As somtyne it bifell of oon þþat was vnþnder þþ cure of a lady by halfe a 3ere, after þþþþ vppermore iuncture of þþ bone of þþ fynger was drawen out. **ffor why; þþt lady entended for to haue heled hym al-oonly wip drynk 40
of Antioche and oper pillules; and for cause pat the
nail of pe fyngre abode stille, she trowed perfors for to
haue souded pe place of pe fyngre in whiche pe bone
4 pat was drawne oute stode before; whiche, forsope, miȝt
noȝt be, for pe flessh and pe skynne wip pe naile pat
went aboute pe bone before war infecte and putrefacte
of pe bone; wherfore of necessite al mortified and cor-
rupte bishoued to be drawne out of pe flessh and pe skyn
or pat it shulde come to helpe. perfors a long tyme
ouerpassed, when he come to me and pe fyngre ysene, first
I putte in poudre creoferoboron, and aboue pe emplastre
12 Sanguiboetos in pe maner seid afore. Aftirward, it
remoued, I perceyued pat it was of hard substance and
inobedient to pe poudre; þan putte I to poudre of
arsenek. In þe day, forsope, folowyng, I biholdyng þe
16 fyngre I perceyued pat þe arsenek had wrouȝt litel or
noȝt. sfor þor place wher arsenek is putte in, if it wirch
perfitely, shal bycome blo & bolned aboute þe extremites
wipin a niȝt and a day; Aftir in þe prid day þer shal
20 departe in sondre in þat blones, þat is to sey mortified
fro þe quik. But þat worchynge shal better done and
soner if þe seconde day after þe puttyng to of arsenek
be putte to larde wip þe emplastre sanguiboetes. The
24 place, forsope, of þe forseid fyngre strongly agaynstode
to þe poudre of arsenek. sfor þor place was drye and
inveterate, or olde, in substaunce. þis y-sene, wip som
men it is to wirche wip cauteries; þan, forsope, a
28 cautery putte þer-to, I Brent þe fyngre in þe extremite
of it wipin vnto þe bone; þe pacient, forsope, almost
feled noþing. Aftir þe brennyng, forsope, I putte in
to þe hole þe fattenes of lard wip þe iuse of porres;
32 þe second day, forsope, a grete quantite y-morȳtisid, þe
flessh and þe skynne went away wip þe naile; þan
þat tyme I putte-to þe emplastre Sanguiboetes; In þe
mornynge, forsope, þe poudre Creoferoboron wip þe
36 same emplastre. And so aftirward by seuen dayes, ich
day wirchynge as it is seid, þer was þitte perfors in þe
wounde þe endes or heuedes of synowes; whiche, þe
bone remoued, war festned, apperyng wip a maner blaknes,
40 and þe flessh mortified on þe to partye. þis y-sene,
Of Fistulae in various parts.

Of fistulæ I couched softly pe heuedes of pe synowes and pe side mortified with ane hote iren, puttyng in pe shauyng of lard wip pe iuse of porres. In pe mornying, forsope, pat superfuc fleesh was removed, and pan I 4 putte in poudre of Creoferoboron for to mundifye it, and aboue pe emplastre forseid, and so afterward continually by pre dayes: pan, forsope, putte I to pe enoyntment made of licium, seid afore, continually by yen dayes. I 8 enoynted, forsope, al aboute pe fynguer vpon aiper side wip ane enoyntment made of sope and sulphure, and als sone pe fynguer was flayne, and put out as it war scales; and als sone pe bolnyng biganne for to cese; pan, for-12 sope, I putte-to vnguentuw viride, pe bigan for to growe vpon pe heued of pe bone of pe iuncture rede fleesh to pe gretnes 16 of a pese; and pat y-sene, I distroyed it wip a cauterie; And pe fynguer bigan for to soude. But a litel after pe puttyng to of vnguentum viride, pe bigan for to growe vpon pe heued of pe bone of pe iuncture rede fleesh to pe gretnes 16 of a pese; and pat y-sene, I distroyed it wip a cauterie; And pe patient recovered perfectly. Recipe: Sulphur, auri-pigment, tartar, alume, vitriot, sape and oyle; whiche ich day puttyng to oones, he 20 recouered helpè perfitely.

8. Of fistul in pe lawe ioyntour of pe fyngers, and in pe legges, knees, fete, & ankles, wip corruptyng of pe bones, and pe hardnes 24 of pe cure.

Cases of Spina ventosa.

Amputation is best.

[S]um-tyme also the fistule gutte byfallep in pe fyngers of 3ong men, and oft-tymes of 3ong wymmen, in pe lower ioynture by pe hande, and it makep holes in 28 pe skynne som-tyme on pe to party and som-tyme on bope partyes. When pe knowes, forsope, pe holes to be on pe bope partyes, witte pou pat pe pacient is incurable, But if pe fynguer be holy cutte away be pe 32 iuncture where it is festned pe hand. If pe bone, forsope, of pe hand nije to pat fynguer be corrupte also, he is incurable but if it be drawn out. But witte pou pat it is nojt mich to entremette of pe cure of suche pat 36 pe help of pam be vndertaken. Sfor I haue but seldom
sene any suche scape wipout depe whan pe sikenes was helped. for pe fluxe or pe rynnyng per y-dried, or stopped, or staunched, pai dye sone after. Suche 4 pingis shalt pou knowe pus: pe fynger or pe hand, or pe fote, or pe legge, or any oper membre in whiche is sich a fistule stynkeb gretly; it hap streite holes; pe woundes hap hardnes wip whitenes and redenes; and 8 when pe wondes be rennyng pan pe pacient hap hymself mirly and glad; and when pai ar stopped pe pacientes bene pale in pe face and lene and feble. Also it fallep of-tyme in pe legge, in pe knee, in pe fote, and in pe ankle. In pe legge and in pe fote I haue cured it, and in pe ankle; But in pe ankle and pe kne also it bristed out agayn aftir litle tyme.

9. Of pe maner of cure of oon pat had pe fistule in pe legges aboue pe ankle.

[O] on tyme I heled a man pat had a fistule goutte in pe legge aboue pe ankle and pe fote wip pe emplastre Sanguiboetes, and wip a poudre pat is *made pus: 20 Recipe auripigmenti, sulphur, calx viue, and black sape ana; be pai poudred and putte to tuyse in pe day. Aboute pe wounde, forsope, I anoynted it wip comow oyle or vnquentum album vnto pat he come to perfite 24 helpe. Also I gaffe hym drynk of Antioche. Aftir pe cure, forsope, I sawe hym neuer, perfore I know nojt how long he liffed.

10. Of pe maner of cure of ane enposteme in the buq of the knee that was disposed to the fistule.

[O] on aposteme come to a man in the bowyang of pe kne, pat was hard to breke for vncouenable emplastres 32 putte per-to first; perfore I putte first perto pe skynne of lard pat diffiep wele apostemee; And neferlesse after pe dayes I miʒt noʒt perceyue signe or tokne of rupture or of brystyng. Whiche y-sene, I wold priʒ haue opned 36 it wip a fleobotome or wip a rasour, but pe pacient for-

Signs of incurable fistule.

A powder for fistulous gout.

[* leaf 154]

Treatment of a patient with an inflammation in the ham, who would not have it opened.
soke it; pan, forsoþe, put I to ane herbe y-brissed þat is called pede lyon, þat it miȝt make a rupture in þe skyn, for it was to pike; and in þe niȝt þe pacient put it away. þan made I ane emplastre to hym of mele of 4 whete and of clene hony medled togidre, and I putte it to; & aftir þe second puttyng to it brest in þe niȝt, and þer ranne out þerof quitour wip-out mesure; þe quitoure y-pristed out, I putte in tentes of larde to þe 8 lengþe of a fynger, þat þe hole shulde noȝt be stopped byfore þat þe aposteme war purged. In þe mene tyme þe pacient felle into þe febres ague, And als some þe flux or þe reynyng of þe quitour in þe aposteme ceded, 12 in partye for negligence þat tentes was noȝt put in bycause of þe sikenes, and in party for distemperaunce of hete þat dried it. And so, þe hole y-closed or stopped, it biganne eft-sones for to bolne bineþe and for to gedre 16 to a newe aposteme; þe whiche y-sene, I opned þe hole wip a spature and expressed þe quitour gedrid to-gidre. Aftirward I putte in ich day of lard, renewyng it ich, by a fortniȝt and more. And neþerlesse I perceyued 20 noȝt þat þe aposteme dried anyþing, but more and more for to harden and wax rede, and putte out quitore, liquide and watry, somtyme mych and somtyme noping. þerfore I perceyued þat þe place was disposed to þe 24 fistule, for it had ane hole or a mouþe and a depe wonde, and it putte out quitour of diuerce coloure and liquide, wip hardnes of þe place and yuel habitude or haunya; þerfore I putte in tentes anoyned wip anoynement þat 28 is made agayns þe fistule, þat is þus made: Reciþe auri-pigment, sulphur, calx vine, blak sape; þe whiche, forsoþe, y-putte in fyue tymes or seuen, I perceyued it noping to amende. I made a ventoe to be putte to, and it wolde 32 noȝt drye; þis y-sene, I perceyued þat rewme—þat is a flowye or reynyng miȝt noȝt cese, for þe place in whiche was þe aposteme is of moiste substaunce. And it is to witte þat in þe place byside þe bowynge of the kne 36 in þe neþer party is a place þat hap no flessh but fatnes aloon; As I haue sene þer in dede men, þe skyn of þe flessh y-persed and þat fatnes bene eten or wededde. þan I putte in þe hole vnto þe ground a tent of tre, 40
somewhat broke, and above I cutted pe skyn by pe middes wip a rasour. In pe wonde, *forsope, I putte a cloth depped in pe white of an ey. In pe morne, forsope, it 4 removed, I put in a poudre pat is pus made: Recipe vert-grese, vitriot, auripigmentum, alume; Aboue, forsope, carpe, And afterward ane emplastre pat is pus made: Recipe: api, i[e.] smalach, Mogwort, Walwort &c. as 8 above. And so wip pis poudre and pis emplastre he was some after cured. Or if you wilt, after pe cutting you may hele with diaquilon. But it is to witte pat he 12 pat owe to make incision in pis place pat he be-war of pe grete veyne pat is called sophena, pat come down by the [i]e to pe legge, pat it be nost katted, for it liggep nize pat fatty fleshe &c.

11. [p.]e arme of a certane manne biganne sodenly 16 for to ake & prik in pe buyt of pe arme1 and afterward gretly to bolne fro pe shulder to pe fyngers; pe pacient, forsope, hauntyng or vsyng pe medycine of ladie3, as it war by a monep, euermore had hymself worse. At pe 20 last he so3t & asked my help. And when I bihelde his arme gretly bolnde & replete of redenes & of brennyng & hardne3 & akyn, first I made hym ane emplastre of tartare of ale, i[e.] dregge3, & of malue3, & hony, & salt, 24 & bran, & schepe3 talowe boiled togidre to thikne3, & streched vpon stupa3 and folden with a lynne clope. I putte pe emplastre on his arme, and alsone he feled alegance of akyn. pe 3 day, forsope, remeuyng pe emplastre, pe bolnyng in party was slaked. Bot in pe buyt of pe arme al pe colleccion or gedryng abode stille, schewyn as it schuld gadre to ane heued. pe which y-sene, I putte to ane emplastro maturatyue of malue3 y-sopen 32 and y-brissed, with grese 3 daies or 4, and neperles I perceyued neuer pe soner for to be matured, bot pe bolnyng abode mych stile. And in pe buyt of pe arme pe skyne appered rounde with diuere colours to pe maner of a tode,2 alwaie3 denying tokne of rupture. And in pe ground or bothe of pat gedryng was felt ane hard ping, as it war ane nutte ri3t in pe buyt vnder avena epatica.* Which y-sene, I putte to al a ni3t ane

1 in flexu brachii. 2 ad modum bufonias. 3 a = "i[e.] lyuer wayne" overlined.

Treatment of a Patient with a Plugged Vein.

ARDERNE.
The arm blistered, emplastre of coluer, dong\textsuperscript{1} & porris\textsuperscript{a} & garlek y-brissed with pe iuyse of apii and a gode handful of salt. And in pe mornyng remenying it, pe place was ful of little bladders in maner of pustule\textsuperscript{3}, and pe went out as it war 4 water; pis y-sene, where pe sore semed pikker I putte upon a clope schapen to pe brede of pe sore ane vnte-ment made of blak sope and sulphure & of arsenec; aboue pat, forsope, pe emplastre seid afore. pe second day, 8 forsope, pat emplastre & oyntement remeued, pe skyn was vtterly bristen, and per appered a litel hole of pe arme, and per went out vnder blak water and holdyng in maner of groute. Pan I made putte aboue pat place chaungy 12 of lard; aboue, forsope, ane emplastre pis made. 

Recipe: Iuyse of apii, wormode, Mugwort, netle, walwort, hony, white of ane ey, ana, and tempred with mele of ry. And if pou may no3t haue al pis pisings, pe iuyse alon of 16 apii\textsuperscript{b} with hony and white of ane ey and mele availlep mych. And pan bigan pe ded flesch for to disseuere, And in pe arme wher war bифore pe bladders euermore went out droppes of white watire when pe arme was bare 20 with-out pe emplastre. And in midde\textsuperscript{3} of pe more wonde appered pappe\textsuperscript{3} of gret flesch; and euermore per appered (a certayne\textsuperscript{?})\textsuperscript{2} rednes in pe skyn. To pe pappe3, forsope, I made sich a poudre; Recipe viridis [æris], vitriol, auripig-mentum, alum ana; And I put it to ich opet daie; aboue pe poudre, forsope, I putte carpe, and at pe last aboue pat I put a litel clouth to pe quantite of pe wounde enoynted with vnguento fusco or albo or viridi. 28 pe rednes, forsope, and pe watry place3 I enoynted with ane oyntement made of blak sape, and poudre of sulphur; aboue, forsope, a dry lynnen cloute, whiche I lete lye stille to pat it wold fall away bi it-self. And 32 pan pat place put away from it al dry skynne3; than eft-son3 I anoyneted with pe forseid vnte-ment vnto pat pe rednes & pe water went vtterly away. pe forseid wonde, forsope, was fully cured in pe forseid maner. Witte pou 36 pat pis anoynted is best to al spotte3 or filpe3 of pe skyn which gisep oute watre and make\textsuperscript{p} redne3, for it

\textsuperscript{1}ex fimo columbino. 

\textsuperscript{2}et semper quidam rubror in cute. 

\textsuperscript{a} "leke3" overlined. 

\textsuperscript{b} "smallach" overlined. 

\textsuperscript{c} Obliterated.
Treatment of an Inflamed Leg.

Trioep' mich and dope away rednes in euer y place of pe body, out-tak in pe eizen.

Bot witte pou pat after pe puttyng to of pe oyme\nment pat is pus made—Recipe sape, sulphur & arsenec-
—per appered a blak litel cruste to pe piknes of a
seme of a scho, pat was hard for to parte with pe forseid
corrosiue; for it was mich ritted. To which I putte aboue
8 a cautery, i.[e.] a brymyng iren, pat pe pacient almost
feled it nozt. After pe cauteriyng forsope, I putte to pe
schauyng of larde, as it is seid aboue, in sewyng al ping
vnto pe ende.

12 12. [A] man was smyten on his legge vpon pe shynbone,
but neperlesse pe skyn was nozt cleuen ¹ alsone after pe
smytyng. Afterward, forsope, pe prid day it bolned
and bigan to ake. perfor he went to a man pat haunted
16 or vsed sich cure vnto pe tyme pat per come in his
legge ane hole, rounde and depe, and ful of blak filth in
maner of brent flesch; whome whan he come to me I
heled hym pus. first I wasched pe wounde with hone
20 wyne, or water in which was decocte pe croppe; or pe
iuyse of plantayne or sich, or in vryne. Afterward I
putte to ane emplastre made of iuyse of playntayne,
of rubarb, of smalach, of hony, and whete or rie mele &
24 white of eyren y-medled togidre; or ane emplastre pat
is called sangw'boetes. Afterward, pe place sumwhat
mollified, I putte to poudre Creoferoboron, with pe
medicine of arsenec y-medlet; aboue pe poudre stipe;
28 or carp; aboue al-togidre, forsope, pe emplastre of api,
mugwort, walwort seid afore. After pe puttyng to
forsope of pis poudre, I did pe cure in al ping with
lard & with oper ping, as it is seid aboue, vnto pe
32 cloesnyng of pe wounde. Afterward, forsoj, with vnu-
guento viridi & vnguento albo and carp I wrozt in maner
as it is seid aboue vnto pe ende. Afterward, forsoj, when
per growed or wex any superlume flesch in pe wounde, I
36 withstode it or mette it with poudre of creoferoboron or
of litarpe vnto pe fulle curyng of pe wounde. If any
pustule; wex in pe leg about pe wounde, pou may

¹ "Broken" overlined.
Two cases of Swollen Leg.

Wounds with swords and axes must be treated like other injuries.

Bruises from the kick of a horse or from stones should first be scarified.

A patient's leg swelled suddenly on a Christmas-day.

Aderne fomented it, and by cock-crow the patient was relieved.

The juice of marigold is very useful in inflammation of the breasts and in whitlow.

A prescription for tartar water.

cure þam with vnguento albo, as it is seid aboue. ffor sop if þe wonde be in þe leg of swerd or ax or sich oper, be it cured as ben oper wounds. If any man, for sop, be smytyn in any party of þe legge 4 violently and wthout wondynge of þe skynne, as fallep oft-tyme of þe smytynge of ane horse fote, or of a stone or of sich oper, þan is it gode sone in þe bigynnynge for to garse þe place y-smyten and for to draw out blode þe-er-of, and afterward for to putte to emplastre; represyng þe akyng and bolnyng.

[A] man in þe day of þe natuiute of our lorde sodenly had his legge grely bolnd fro þe kne to þe ankle3, 12 with redenes and gret brennyng, so þat he myzt nozt stand. I (smeared?)a þe legge on ych side, and epithimated wth þe iuyse of solsequi, i.[e.] marigold, and a litil vine gre putte perto,1 and made þam a litel leuke b; þe which 16 y-do, lynnen clopes wette in þe same iuyse I laide warme aboute his legge, and when þe clope was dronken of þe iuse I laid hym in his couche; And for certayn afor þe kok kraw þe akyng and þe brennyng was cesed and 20 þe pacient rested wele. And within þe daies without any oper medicyn he was perfittely cured, whar-of many men wondred. Also for certayn þe iuyse of solsiquii, marigold, epithimated bi it-self or wth vine gre destroyep 24 meruelously apostemed in þe pappes of wymmen, and þe felon,e and þe carbuncle and þekyng,2 and rednes, and blone3, and brennyng þat comeþ of þe forsaid þings.

[A] chanon was on a tyme seke, and when he bigan to 28 wex hole þar was made a grete gedryng to-gidre of humour desenden dyng doune in his legge. After a tyme, for sop, þer wex puseleþ brovnyesch and clayisch.3 He, for sop, putte þat he schuld dry þe pusche; watre of 32 tartar þus y-made: Recipe tartari lþ i or iþ, and putte it in ane newe erpen potte, and, þe mouþe of þe potte stopped wth clay, putte it in a strong fire and lat it be þer a nizt and a day or more if þou wull. Afterward 36 tak þat tartar and hyng it in some place in a lynnenn

a Obliterated. b "warne" overlined. c "antrace" overlined.
sacce or pokette, and vnder it putte a brasen vessel to recyeue pe watre pat distillep droppyngly to pe maner of lye out of pe sak; pis watre is seid for to dry puschej 4 wele, bot neperlesse it availed noyt to hym. At pe last, forsoþ, per grow in pat party of pe legge a large wounde, And about pe ankles pre or four smale wounde; to pe brede of ane halfpeny. And pe legge semed of 8 3elow colour medled with rednes fro pe calf to pe ankeleþ, And pe skynne kast euermore out many skaleþ. When, forsoþ, he had vsed a certayne tyme lede or puluer incarnatyue and sawe pat it availed hym noping, pan 12 he vsed a long tyme ane entrete pat is called entraectum nigrum, blak entrete, which is made of white lede and rede and comon oile and tartarye &c.; bot neperlesse he perceyued none amendlyng perof, for it come to a mor-
16 male; pe which, when I had sene it, I affermed it to be a mormale. And I did sich a cure to it: pis is pe cure to pe mormale—first sewe pe pacient legge strongly with a lynne clope 2; After wasche wele pat legge so 20 sewed with hote watre, after pat pe pacient may suffre. And so after pe waschynge lat it lye by a naturel day, pat is ane hole day & a niȝt, kepynge pe legge fro aier and fro cold. pe second day, forsoþ, remoue pe clope 24 and mundifie pe wounde or pe wounds if pai be many, and putte in euery wounde a litel pece of lynne clope moisted in cold watre. Afterward putte of pe oyntement of dyuylyne in pe circuite of pe wounde 3 aboue pe hole 28 skynne so pat it touche no waiþ; pe woundeþ with-in, & couer it with a lynne clope y-wette. Do þus euery day tuyeþ, renewyng pe oyntment and mundifying pe woundeþ and fyllyng þam of a lynne clope y-wette, as it is seid 32 aboue. pis is pe oyntment: Recipe coperose, sal nitri, a cineris geneste, a cineris b nigri testudinis, b atramenti, ana, parte 1; viridis greei somwhat; Of quikke-siluer double to pe quantite of one of pe forseid; Of boreþ 36 grese resolved at pe fire and mundified, þat sufficeþ. þan medle þirst þe ashes with þe grese, afterward þe top er poudreþ, and when þou hast wele ymedled, put it in a 1 Que titulum confert de Dyuelyn.
2 Primoconsertere tibiarn fortiter et aliquantum stricte in panno lineo.
3 Postea pone de isto unguento in circuito vulneris.

\[\text{The treat-ment of an ulcerated leg in a Canon.}\]

Arderne diagnosed the case as mormale or inflamed sore on the leg.

His treatment by bandaging and very hot fomenta-
tions, then cold compresses, afterwards mercurial ointment.

\[\text{\textsuperscript{a} “aschen of brome” overlined.}\]
\[\text{\textsuperscript{b} “of blak snaille” overlined.}\]
box and it schal be blak oyntment. With pis oyntment, forspõ, I cured fully pe gretter wonde3 of pe forseid legge, doyng in pe maner seid afore; pe lese wonde3, forspõ, cured I with vunguento viridi, i[e.] grene oyntment of lanfrank. Per was dede flesch of blo colour to pe brede of a peny; pat dede flesch, forspõ, was mich pikke, and, pat y-se, I kute with a rasour a litel pe ouer party of pat flesch; Afterward I putte to larde, and so at pe last with 8 larde & with cuttyng I dissolued, i[e.] lesyd it vtterly. Pat flesch perfor remoue, eftsones with pe oyntment of dyuylyn 1 aforesaid and a clope wette in water I held pe wounde opne to pe brede of a peny, 2 And pan eftsones 12 brest out a wounde aboute pe side3, and it bygan to large it vnto pat it was almost of pe same gretne3 as it was afore. 3 Pat y-sene, I putted in four tyme3 poudre of litarge and anoyncted it about with vunguento albo, and putte in pe 16 wounde a lynne clope wette in pe water of herb robert. Which cure semed to me more profitable, and sowded better pe extremite3 and glowe4 pan vnto perfite halpe.

*If pe mormale be euene aboue pe schyn-bone, pat it be 20 more sikerly and more sone cured it is profitable to cutte pe dede flesch and putte it away if pe pacient consent. And if it be cutte, alsone after pe cuttyng is to be putte in a cloute wette in whyte of ane ay al a ny3t. Afterward 24 putte in poudre of white glasse and of alum 3ucaryne, i[e.] alun glasse, or alun plume or of bope. And if poun se bone mortified, witte pat it is incurable or vunep for to merowe be cured. If poun trow it be 28 curable, it is to be helped with some cure of pe mormale in pe boke of lanfrank. Also, as it is seid aboue, som tyme a man is smytyn som party of pe legge violently without wondyng of pe skynne, as of ane hors fote or of 32 a stone or staffe or sich oper, and pan is it gode sone for to scarifie pe place y-smyten and drawe pe blode penne3, and after put on enplastre3 repressyng akyng and boh-yng. ffor oft-tyme3 pe mormale come3 of sich pings. 36 Agayne pe mormale be per lesnyng* of vena basilica, i[e.] lyuerwayne, of pe ri3t arme or on pe lef; after-

1 cum unguento de Dynelyn.
2 uaque ad festum Scti Matthæi Apostoli et Ecclesiae proxime sequere operatus sum.
3 circa fes-tum Scti Laurentii.
4 et conglutinavit.

*Leaf 156, back
It is best to cut away the dead flesh in an ulcerated leg, and then to apply a powder.

154

lanfrank in his book gives advice about the cure of a mormale.
ward, if it be nede, of pe sophene. At pe last be he scarified a in pe leggez.

14. [A] tretys of pe emoraidez, y-drawn out after lam-4 frank, a discrete maistre of pe kyng3 of fraunce; which made tuo bokez of cirurgie, pe lesse and pe more. Also after maister bernard de gordon in his lilie. Also after maister bartelmow in his passionarie. Also after maister Richard 8 in his Micrologie. And after maister Roland, and mayster Guy; And after Roger Bawn And maister Iamarcii, And maister Gilbertyne; And after oper experete men whos doctrayne I haue beholden & sene, and which I haue 12 founden moste experete in practising, with helpe of our lord. I schal schew þam in þis boke. Emoroyz ons greke is said flux of blode, and it is seid of emak, þat is blode, and rois, flux. Greke3, forsoþ, calleþ emeroyz
16 flux of blode in what-euer parti of pe body it be; Bot anence latyne men1 þis worde is appropriate to pe flux of blode of þe lure; And þe vneyng apperyng in þe lure when þai flwe,2 i[e.] ren, and ar bolned and akeþ, þai ar called emeroydeþ, bot neþerleþ vnproperly, sauand þe pece of þe comon puple. þfor when þai send out no blode, bot ar bolned, and akeþ, and ycheþ or smertþ þai ar called by oper names anence lecheþ. Lewed men and vnex-
24 perte men calleþ al þe infirmitæ; breedyng in þe lure emeroydeþ, or pileþ, or fics. ffrance men calleþ emeroydeþ; fics, men of London calleþ þam pileþ. Neþerlesse it is noþt to strefe agayneþ þe vse of spekyng, bot rasper it 28 spedþ þat leret men and experete knawe þe maner of spekyng and vse it. þfor John Damascen seip ‘It is heuy for to chaunge noying custom, and most if it be olde.’ Neþerleþ of þe name is no struyng whileþ þe
32 sekeneþ bene known. Diuere auctoureþ, forsoþ, hþ putte diuere names to þe sekeneþ of þe lure, and also þai haue assigned diuere causes and spiceþ, And þai haue ymagned many maners of curacions; Of whiche 36 some more profitable and ofter experete bene sewyngly to be noted vnder compendiousneþ to þe vtilite b of helyng, þefor for to tretþ schortly it is first to witte þat þe

1 Apud Latinos.
2 quando fluunt.

A Treatise on Haemorrhoids. 55

[A treatise on Piles. Chieflly a compilation.

Etymology of the word Emeralds. The Greeks use the word in a more general sense than the Latin writers.

The unlearned call everything piles. Frenchmen call piles "figs,"

but there nothing much in a name if all are agreed as to the condition.

a "garsed" overlined.  b "i[e.] profite" overlined.
Piles, Condylomata, Warts—Causes and Symptoms.

Varieties of piles:

emeroide3 if pai sende out blode pai ar seid ry3tfully emeroide3. If per appere, forsop, in pe lure bolnyngs blo or blak, or redne3 to pe quantite of a bene or gretter, pat is to pe quantite of a testicle of a cok or of a hounde, 4 as I haue oftyme sene, som tyme occupiuyng pe to half of pe lure only, and som tyme bope, siche bene called of Avicen deef emeroyd, for per rynnepe nopine out of pam. And siche bolnyngs forsop, if pei be gretter, 8 puttyng out no blode, pai ar called condilomata, of con-
dilo of greke, pat is pe closed fist of a man. Condilomata, forsop, schewep pe schappe of a fist y-closed, And condilomata brede3 of gret malicious or malencoli-12 ous blode. After lamfrank, forsop, pe lesse bolnyng3 if pei be blak or blo pai ar called attritos, 1 or atreos, for pe blak colour of pam. If pai be rede pai ar called uve, i.[e.] grape3, and pai haue pe schap of a rede vyne or 16 grape. And pai pat bene of blode and of colre ar called morale3, 2 and pai ar like to mulberie3 when pai bigynne to wax rede. And som bene called verucale3 for pai ar like to warte3, and siche hap pair bygynnyng of malen-20 colye. And som bene of blode, pof it be bot seldom, which ar called fics, 4 If pai be made of ventosite 4 with grete streching of pe skynne. Al pe forseid may be reduced vnlo tuo pings: Ou3per of hotene3 of humours, 24 or of mycli abounding of blode. If pat hotene3 be in cause, pat is blode and colre, pise schal be pe signe— bremnyng with greuous prikyng, and smertyng, and vn-
slepyng, and som tyme with vychnyng in pe lende3 and 28 with tenasmon and gret costyuen3 of pe wombe, and prist, and feblene3 of goyn. Signe3 of cold cause, pat is of gret blode and malencolious, bene pise—bolnyng with hardne3 and derkne3 and akyng—but not scharp as 32 of hote cause—pe colour of pe bolnyng blo or blak, smertyng in pe lure, with lousene3 of pe wombe and akyng, and greuousne3 or heuyne3 of pe pie3. Signe3 if pe em[er]oide3 be of multitude of blode bene pise, pat 36 is to sey of pe vyney3 apperyng in pe legge3. And if

1 "blake3" overlined. 2 "mulberie3" overlined.
3 "warty" overlined.
4-4 "after gordon, and pai ar as war white bledders" overlined.
Piles, their Pathology and Uses.

pai ren, pat pai ren mych & oft-tyme, and pat pe pacient be of sanguyne habitude. for why; in lam is multitude of blode *pat vsep not fleebotomye, and pat drynke copiously and oftyme3 wyne, and pat etep scharp pings, as onyons, leke3, caule3, comyne, and pat takep medicynes apertyue3 of veyne3; as bene scamonye i.[e.] aloe and euforbiuam, as wittenessep all auctours toigidre and experte men. Emeroide3 ar caused of malen-colious blode, which is pe fece of clene blode aboundand in our body; which blode, forsop, for his yuel qualite and odious to nature, discretuye vertu enforcep for to cast 12 out to pe helpyng of al pe body, helpyng pe vertu expulsyue of al pe membre; toigidre. And so pur; pe strengpe of nature it is putte out fro pe vayne kilyuz; pat liep to rig-bone of pe bak, which properly is recep-tacle of malencolious blode. Which kylis, forsoh, is diuited into five branche3 pat bene ended about pe party of nature4; which veyne3, forsoh, when pai ar som tyme filled of melancolious blode pai distende, i.[e.] 20 streche, so pe veyne3 pat ouper pe blode brestep out or per ar gendred bolynyg3 of diuere spice3 and schape3. And also oper sinthomata,8 i.[e.] perile3, as scharp akyng and prikkyng, brynnyng, yehyng, smertyng, thenasmon, i.[e.] 24 inordinate appetite of egestion, with ful mich enforsyng and neperlesse he may do none egstion when he comep to pe pruyé. If, forsoh, pe blode brist out it is called pe emoroyde3; but if pat it flowe temperatly it dop 28 many helpyngs and preseruep pe body fro many sekene3 aduste and corrupte, as is Mania, malencolia, pleuresis, lepre, morfe, ydropisy, mormale, quartane, passions of pe splene, and so of oper like. Bot as it preseruep fro 32 pise when pat it flewep temperatly, so when it is wont for to flewe and afterward cesep vtterly al pe for-seid sekenes ar gendred. Also when pai flewe ouer temperance pai bene cause of ptisyk or of ydropisy. 36 Wherfor seip Galien and ypocras after lamfrank 'Ich long lastyng and ouermych puttyng out of blode is moste mi3ty cause for to make ydropisy.' perfor in lam in whome malencolious blode is multipliied temperite fluying

*a "i.[e.] lure" overlined.

[+ leaf 157, back] Those who are subject to congestive piles.

The cause of piles.

The path-ology of piles.

Anatomy of the vena cava.

Symptoms of piles.

Uses of piles when they only bleed moderately.
The varieties of Bleeding Piles.

of blode of þe emeroydeʒ helpeþ mych, ne it is noþt
utterly to be restreyneyd. It is called temperite vse when
þe pacientes felen þamself more liþt þat þai war wont1; hauynge better appetite, and etyng and slepyng more 4
swetely or softly, and sicþ òper. Bot when þe pacientes
felen þamself more heuy, and þer schewe malice of
appetite and foule colour of body, þan is þe flwyng owen
mych; wherfor it is alson ce successuyely to be restreyneyd 8
and turned away. þerfor sipe þer is noþt a litel
hardnec in restreyneyng of þe emeroidæ, þerfor many
þings ar be noted of þe restreyneyng of þam; þat is to
sey þat þe leche wyttwe þeþer þe flowyng be done 12
of anathemasy or of diabrosi or of rixi; þat is wheþer
þe flowyng be made of opnyng of veyneyʒ, þat is
called anapemasis; or of fretryng of þe veyneyʒ, þat is
called diabrosis; or of cleuynge or twynnyng, þat is 16
called rixis. þerfor if þe blode ybroþt to þe lure be
aduste—for when blode is aduste it is scharped 2—or if
false flewme or colre be medled, þan oft-tymeʒ þe veyneyʒ
ar freted and þai make þe fluxe. And for certayne sicþ 20
flux is of hard restreyneyng. ʃʃor why; þe substance of
þe veyne yfreted may noþt be *sonded 3 without disese
and heuynes, sipe þat it nedþe a medicyne corrosyue. And
ten now-of-daieʒ bene vnapacient and yuel tholyng, 24
And for-pi flowyng of diabrosi a is of hard curyng. And
þe secundary is rixis b which also is cured with corrosyueʒ
in þe bygynnyng. Anathemasis c is more liþly cured
þan þe òper, bot perauenture noþt without corrosyueʒ. 28
bis I sey, if þe flowyng be olde, Anathemasis is made
for aboundance of blode or for ventosite descendynge
doune. Rixis, forsoþ, is made of ouer myche drynecʒ, of
cause within-forþe or of cause without-forþe, or of hardnec 32
of filpeʒ, or for ane hote aposteme, or any scharpe flowyng.
Also flowyng emoroydeʒ somtyme ar hidde within, without
any bolnyngs schewynge outward, þat of som þai ar
demed to be dissenterykeʒ and yuelʒ wrong. ʃʃor why, in 36
þe inward emoroidæ first gop out egestion and afterward
gop out blode with egestion to-gidre. In ciliaca passion,
forsoþ, gop out blode and afterward egestion. Ciliaca

1 cum patien tes se
2 quia süm
3 non con-
solidari.
4 ex duritie
5 quae a

| **What constitutes moderate bleeding.** |
| **How to stop the bleeding from piles.** |
| **The cause of the bleeding in piles.** |
| **The impatience of the present generation.** |
| **Bleeding piles are often concealed piles.** |

*a “fretryng” overlined.  b “clyffyng” overlined.  c “opnyng” overlined.*
Signs of danger in Bleeding Piles. 59

passion is akynge of pe wombe with puttyng out of blode sewyng. Also after gordon, scilicet de morbe, 'In every ping pat gop out of pe body bene 3 comon cause';

4. Ouer by reson of pe membre, or of vertue, or of humour. If it be bi reson of pe membre, pat is for pe membre is ouer pinne. If it be for vertue, pan it is for vertue retentyue is feble, and vertu expulseye strong.

8 If it be for humour, pat is for ouer it is malencoliuous or for it is scharp, or subtle, or watrye. Also emoroide; ar caused of scharpnes of blode and ouer mych hete brennyng pe blode, as in colorik men pat bene of hote nature; for blode when it is brennt it getep scharpnes, as it is seid afore. Also ouer mych flowyng of blode is made ouer for multitude of blode, as in pan pat drynkep mych wyne or ouer mete; or drynkep pat mulitiplep blode, or in pan pat bene sangyne complexion. Also it is made for yuel qualite of blode, as for it is ouer scharp or subtle or watry, as in pan pat vsep rawe fruytep, ffor raw fruytep; gendrep watry blode. Pe causes, forsope, y-knownen, propre cure may be done to. Signe3 of dedly flowyng bene pise, pat is to sey:—flowyng of blode bryngyng to swoungyng is mortale*; Also flowyng of blode with coldne3 of extremite3 is mortale; Also flowyng pat comep sodeynly and with hastine3 is mortale; Also flowyng of blode pat brynghep to pale colour, or grene, or blo, or browne is werst and mortale; Also quantite of blode passing 4 pounde is yuel, and if it come to 24 it is dep. flowyng of blode with liynype of pe body is gode. In pan pat polep emoroidep; pe vryne schal be in colour remissed white with powdryy resolucions blak or blo residentep; in pe botheme of pe vessel. After Egidi de vринis, white and remisse ow for to be of malencoliuous blode ouer abundant in pe body, wherfor natural hete is febled. ffor why; digestion waxep raw, and of rawnes of digestion is pe vryne discolored, * And it apperep with powdryy resolucions which bene resolued of malencoliuous blode blak and erpi aboundyng, and by contynuel wai3 pai ar drawen to pe bladdar and putte out with pe vryne. And for pai ar 40 heuy and erpi pai satle in pe gronde. Pe same vryne

They are to be dis- tinguished from dyen- 
tery and pasia lliaca.

Bernard de Gordon's Lillium Medicines quoted.

Piles are due to an excess of blood,

to eating and drinking too much,
to diseases of the blood.


Quotes Gilles de Corbeill de Urinis.

[leaf 158, back]

* "dedly" overlined.
The Treatment of Bleeding Piles.

also may betokne in men vice of pe splene, and in wynnmen withholdyng of menstrual. And witte pou pat after gordon in clarificacione de vicio splenis pat innatural humours may be gendred in oper place pan in 4 pe lyuer, as in pe stomak colre peassuye, i.e. grene, and also colre eruginous, of which is gendred noli-me-tangere, and lupus. And also in pe veyne ar gendred vnnaturale humours. Bot pe splene hap no vertu of gendryng 8 anyping, sipe it is noping bot a receptakle of malencolie, which is ane odious humour to nature and to al membres of pe body for his yuel qualitē. Also witte pou pat pe blode hapé nouþer house, ne receptakle, ne prison; 12 but colre and malencoly hap prisons, pat is to sey colre in pe chiste of pe gall and malencoly in pe splene. Also witte pou pat if pe pacient of emoroide3 be of malencolious complexion, pise bene tokne3:—smalne3 of 16 body, discoloured, erpi, angry, waike of hert, heny, and only ferful and couaitous. And witte pou pat if pe forseid pacient sende out blode blak and pikke and stynkyng, pat pis flowyng is noþt to be restreynd, bot if 20 it ouerflowe & pe pacient be febled. In every-ping, forsoþ, pe vertu of pe body is to be kept bifor al oper pings. Agaynj pe flowyng of pe emoroide3 distempre pou moste subtile mele of whete, with iuyse of millefoile, and make þerof pillule3, and giffe hym every day in þe mornynge 3 or 4 of þam distempered with wyne of decoccion of millefoile, or plantayn, or burso pastoris, or rede netle, or paruencis. Bot if pe pacient be of san-28 guyne complexion, and lisyng delicately and in ydelyn, and blode be abundand, þan þof þer be sych flowyng it is noþt to be restreynd bot if it ouer flow, þat is known by þe tokne3 aforsesid. Perfor if þer faþ ouer 32 mych flowyng, it is spedeful þat it be restreynd; for, after galiu, blode is norischyng of al membre3, als wele of sadde as of softe, and al hap bigyngyng or spryngyng of blode; and for-als-myche it is seid þe frende of nature, 36 perch if þe frende be destroyed þe enemy waxþe miȝty. Perfor, after gordon, to þe curyng of þe emoroide3 is fleobotomy competent, if vertu and age suffre it,

a "sekenes" overlined.  
b "duellyng" overlined.  
c "or lene3" overlined.
bope for it avoiep matery goyng afore, and also it
withdrawp pe matery to pe contrary." And fleobotomy
ow to be done of pe basilic veyne of pe arme for mater
4 goyng afore, and afterward of pe sophenis at pe hele, pe
vtter sophe turnep pe flowyng of pe emoroidez and
restreynep pe emoroidez for euermore. Whiche fleo-
botomy, forsof, continued *fro 3ere to 3ere, and namely
8 about pe fest of seynt MicheH, before and after one3 or
twie3, or when-someuer pe pacient felep tyklyng or
ychyng or prykkyng in pe lure, pan be he minusched as
it is afore seid, and alsoue he schal be cured. Also witte
12 pou pat fleobotomye of pe inward sophenis of pe legge3
prouokep pe emoroidez and menstruez; And of pe vtter
sophenis streynep pe emoroidez and menstruez, and pre-
sreuep for certayne fro pe forseid passions. Sophenez
16 bene po grete veynez pat ar streched fro pe kneez vnto
pe anklez of bope partiez of pe leggez. pe maner of
doyng of pis fleobotomye is pat it be done about pe
hour of euensong or latter, pat is in pe reguynge of
20 malencolious blode, pat is fro pe 9 hour of pe daie
vnto pe 3 hour of pe nizt. Also witte pou pat fleo-
botomye to be done vnder b pe hele and in salutella of
pe handez, owep nzt to be done with a blode ired bot
24 with a lanceete, for hurtyng of pe synewez, but if pat
nede make it. Also witte pou pat he pat schal be laten
blode owep for to putte his fete in hote watre, and eft-
sone pan owe to be putte agayn, pat pe blode go out
28 better ; And pe pacient ow to abide still in pe watre,
vnto pat pe blode pat appered first blak chaunge into
fairer colour. Be pis doctrine boldly kept, for if it be
nzt done competently it profiteh nojing or litel; fför
32 certayne I haue cured for euermore, with on latyng blode
al-only of pe vtter sophene, many men pat poled pe
emoroidez many 3eres, vnto pe feblyng of pe body.
Bot witte pou pat, after gordon, pat pof-al fleo-
36 botomye make blode fluxible, neperlesse if it be done
of pe vtter sophene3 it drawep pe flowyng to pe opposite;
and so it makyng1 pe flowyng for to be turned fro
pe lure pat it flow nzt to pe costomable place; and
40 forpi it profitep to al pat ar cured of pe emoroidez,
and also to al pat ar disposed to pe emoioide, for to be laten blode of pe outward sophenis, one or tuye, in ver and also ofte in autumnpe fro zere to zere. for why; sich fleobotyme for certayne preserep fro pe emoroide, and avoide pacientz fro al yuel humours and kep pe pam in hele. And per be no blode-later redy, be per made vsentsyng with garseyng atuix pe buttoke at pe rigebone ende or aboue pe veynez, for it dope pe same 8 pat pe forseid fleobotyme, bot no 3t so expertly, bot nede hape no lawe. 1 And it is to witte pat if pe leche may gethe pe rist reule by al pings in euer wirching after crafte, fleobotyme ow; t neuer to be done in pe emoioide byfore purgacion y-done, and pan sewingly mynischyng. Also after gordon, in ouer mych flowyng of pe emoioide, and also of menstrue, is competent a medicyne laxatyue to purge corrupte humours pat inducep pe flowyng, pat pe cause cesyng, pe efecte cese. To which ping to be done al pe mir[obalan] . . . . a [con]ovienent ffor mirabolani laxep aforre pam and streynep after pam . . . . a and pa avoide al yuel humours. perför be pai preparate . . . . a decocte byfor pat pai be taken, for bi decoccion pair . . . . . a  

*and so pe strength of laxatineyng shuld be febled, bot pai ow to be resolved in rennyng liquore, as in mylk or whay, with racyns & liquorice, ellez walld pai schrek b pe stomake and lefe yuel tokenez byhynd c pam; and so of pe racyns and of pe liquorre ar pai reuled pat pai bryng in no harme. Which, forsope, resolved and pe kirnellez cast away, lat pam lie al a niit in pe same liquor, and in pe mornynge pe colyng be giffen to drynk. pis medicyne, forsope, of mirabolani is ful noble, sipe it purgep humours of niit placez, pat is citrinez colre, 2 kebuliz fleume, 3 Indi malencoly, i.[e.] blak colre, bellerici and emblici colre aduste. And so may al pe humours be purged; wherfor be mirabolani hadde in reuereence, ffor pai availe mich to pe emoioidez and menstrue to be purged. And pis medicyne for certayn curep euer flux of pe wombe, pat is to icy diaira, dissenteria, liecaria. Also it is to wytte pat

a A portion of the leaf is missing.  
b "ronkle" overlined.  
c "after" overlined.  

1 Ad quod faciendum myrobalani sunt multum convenientes, quia myrobalani ante se laxant, et post se constringent hoc est comprimendo laxant et eos humores malos evacuant. Myrobalani, autem, hoc modo, preparantur.—

2 Non debet myrobalani decoqui antequam fumantur, quia per decocctionem eorum gummitas in fumum resolvetur et sic vis purgandi debilitaretur.
Treatment of Piles by Diet and Medicines.

in pacient5 of pe emoroid3 be per neuer giffen medicyne3 apertyue3 of veyne3 nouper be pe moupe, as scamoune, or aloe, or euforbium, comyn, lek3, onyans, garleke and sich

4 oper scharp ping3; ne be par no3t putte opon pe place, out take aloeen and comyn, which tuo, putte outward, streynep, and with-in-forp taken opnep veyne3. Bot it is to wytte pat in pe forseid fluxes3 of pe wombe mirabolan ow to be

8 dissolved in gote mylk,1 if it may be had, or in iuse or water of furnitere or of playntane, or in rayne water or rose water, or of veruene, or of anooper stiptike herbe as millefoile or mynte. Also witte pon, after al auctours,

12 pat pose pings pat restrynep emoroid3 restrynep men-

strues, and econverso; And pe same seken3 pat comeb of pe vice of menstrues, comeb also of pe emoroid, & econverso; and so by sewyng a pat pai acorde in cure. 'Perfor in cold

16 cause be pai giffen; pat hetep and ingresseb pe mater of flowyng of blode, als wele of pe party of mete3 as of medicyne3. Of pe party, forso3p, of mete3 be per giffen milk, mele of whete decocte, frese bene3, with canel, gret

20 wyne, rije2 and mynte. Of pe party of medicyne be per giffen note of cipresse3 and pe lef3, mirre, thure, mastike, ladanum, storax calamita, anysse rosten, and sich ope.

And exercice and strong frotyngs and swetyngs availep.

24 And if pe cause be hote, be per giffen lentes b with vinegre, porcelane,4 sour milk, sopen barly brede, substance of cole3 pe tuo watre35 pat it is decocte in y-cast away, pere3, coynce6 & melde3,7 & sich oper. Medicyne3 restrictyue3

28 bene pise; Camphore, accacia, spodin, coriandre, sanguis draconis, sandali, lap[is] omoptoes,8 bole armoniac, ypo-

quistid,9 galle3 cupule, sumak, mirteH,10 . . . . . . .

. . . c plantane, cincofoile, quinquemerue, ribbewort,

32 bursa pastoris, millefoil, . . . . . c forso3p

a "it folwep" overligned. b "growel" overligned.

A portion of the leaf is missing.

TREATMENT OF PILES BY LOCAL APPLICATIONS.

of the patient moroide; or menstrue; being plettorike... beyng strong. Which is to be take hede to afir al opor pings... . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .

c blodous p Broadway of basilic of hope the armes.

And it is to vnderstoned pat pis is wont to availe aboue ait opor ping: Recipe Iyse of plantane, muscilage dragaunte & gumme arabic; be pai medled to-gidre, and o party be take be the moupe and anopar be cast in by a 8 elisty; and be pis continued, and without dout it schal cure perfitely, vniuersale purgations goyng afore, acted barnard gordon. Also corall brent and gumme arabic, y-medled and y-dronke with cold watre, streynep the flux 12 of blode, of what place so-euer it flowe. Also caneH hape pis propriete,1 pat if per be take of it to the wezt of 2 penys eveyday with cold water, it streynep at the best the flux of emoroides & of menstrue. And if the forseid 16 poudre be giffen with watre of plantane it schal be more effectual. Also vitriol, i.[e.] coprose, streynep the flux of emeroides and drye humours, if it be made with Iyse of moleyn, or of plantayne, or verueyn, or rubarbe, i.[e.] 20 sengrene; for why; of the medlyng of the iythe of any of the forseid cold herbes the hethe of the vitriol is repressed; wherfor it constreyne with drine. But it is to wytte the emoroide hid wth-in the lure ful seldome bene made without fretyng of longaon or kynnyng of it, And perfor certaynly sich maner emoroyde may noxt perfitely be cured bot with a medicine cauterizatiue, as is vitriol combuste be it self or medled with quick-lyme, in a grete case, pat is in a grete fretyng. Also puluis sine pari in pis case putte in helpe wele, bot diselye or angerfully; bot pat is noxt to charge.4 ffor to a strong sekene answerep a strong medycyne, and namely in strong men. I calle, forsof, 32 delicate men feble men. ffor al pingz bene hard to a walk hert man. To a strong hert man, forsof, is no ping grete. To emoroidez hid within the lure, wheper pai be with fretyng or cliflyng or without, the most noble cure schal be 36 ich day to caste in in maner of clistre, or ich oper day, al

1 Item cinnamomum habit hanc proprieta-
2 cum succo tapesibarbato
3 sins corrosione longanonis & ejusdem fissur.
4 sed de hoc non est notandum.
medicyne; temperatly lique in substance with a short and no maner streit nastar of tre. To strong men perfor tak puluis sine pari, and medle it with a litel tapsimel, noupere to pinne ne to pikke, bot pat it may most com- petently be pristed out and setted into pe lure. If forsof pou haue nozt tapsimel, in-stede of it tak hony cotted with a litel vinegre and scooned, and medle it with pe forsaid puluis, and vse it, for it euently availep as tapsimel. If pe pacient, forsof, be delicate, pan tak of citrine oitment parte 1, vitriol combust. partes ij, alom 3u/arine als mich as of bope, and be pai medled to-gidre and jetted in: pis, forsof, wirkep nozt so violently as puluis sine pari for pe vertgre; pat entrep not here. fforsop when pou has done pus onez, or tuyse, or pris, after as it fallep pe pacient for to withhold pe medicine long or short tyme, It bihoues pan for to chaunge pe cure and gifte clisteres; mitigatig; of 3olk of an ey, with oile of roset, and puluis of bole armoniac, and aloes epatici, or sang dragon, by 3 daies or more. When pe pacient, forsof, felep hymself aleged, pan assaye bisily woper pe inner place nede ony maner of pe first medicine, i.e. of pe puluis with tapsi- mel, pat if it so be, be it eft-sonez done, as it is seid afore, als oft as it is nede; Afterwarde be it mitigate, as it is seid. When pe place, forsof, is mns/ified, pan be it heled with pe 3olk of an ey & water of roset, in which be resolved gumme arabic, addid per-to puluis bole, sang dragon, ceruse, aloes, galt, psidie, mummè, olivai mastike; and pe lure first enoyned within with lynsede iole & oile of roset, pe forseid medicyne be setted in with a nastare and so continue it vnto pe last ende, or on like maner after pin owne witte & bisines. And witte pou pat when per is putte vitriol, or puluis sine pari, or any puluis corrosiue within pe lure aboue fretyng3 or clifyng3, pan aboue pe puluis corrosiue owe bole armoniac to be putte, for to defende pe puluis corrosiue pat pe humiditè in pe lure quench nozt & wesch away pe puluis corrosiue. ssor why; bole with his drynes and viscosite consumip pe moistenez, and vitriol wirkep better and more strongly. If, forsof, pou haue no bole, pan putte most smal meel of barly in his stede, for it is riqt mich desiccatiue. jise
The Treatment of Piles by Corrosives.

Pings restreyne p blode: ventosing putte with scarificacion, putte ex antipasi, and mirre, and Iasper of grene colouro hauyng in itself naturale droppes of blode, Saphir rede coralle rubye, and fyme of wilde swyne. Also pise 4 restreyne p blode, of pe vertu of pair qualitez; Iuyse of walwort, Iuyse of rede netelt broken with al his substance, salt y-put perto. Or Iuyse of nettel y-dronkyn restreyne p blode in euyry place of pe body and of euyry cause, and in bope kynde. Bot it is to wytte pat to a woman in menstrue; and to pam pat hanep pe emoroide; owe pe rote of it to be giffen with pe croppe of pe same 3 daies continuly, with rayne watre or rennyng watre. 12

Also of pam pat restreyne p blode bene pise: Mumme, bole armoniac, sang dracon, thure, aloc, vitriol combust, puluer of heres of ane hare, bret or noet bret; puluis of hennez fepers bret, medled with white of ane ey; Alphita, i[e.] 16 subtile & clene meel of barly; Also a been clouen by pe midde3 and putte vpon a wonde and bounden faste, streynep. Bot pis hape no stede bot to so streyt a wounde pat pe been may take within his extremite; pe extremite of pe wounde, as of prikyng of a smal knyfe or sich a ping. Also aschen of ane olde lynne clope y-brent streynep blode; pe white of an ey and barly mele y-putte aboue or withouten. Som-tyme it bihouette for to bynde pe heuede 24 of pe veyne with ane nedel putte vnder pe veyne, and after for to bynde with a prede aboue pe nedel. Som-tyme it byhoute for to cauterije pe wounde with an hote iron. Also blode is stopped with coldyng of pe membre y-hurte, 28 therfor oft-tyme is blode restreynd in som men with one3 drynkyn of colde watre. And som men putte3 pair testicule3 in cold watre; And som men lappe3 pair testicule3 in clay with vinegre or watre, or temperate with iuyse of 32 plantayne; And pis is profitable to pam pat blede3 at pe nose. And it is better if pe fronte and temple3 of pe pacient be emplastred of pe forseid clay, and also if it be putte vnnder pe armehole3; pis, forso3, quenchep pe ferrour 36 of blode and drawe3 to pe opposite. Also puluere3 y-putte

1 corallus rubri, et stercus porci campestris.
2 radix ejus cam summite  ejusdem.
3 Item faba per medium fissa.
4 sanguinem stringit.
in þe nose may more strongly streyne & availle. * Puluer of here3 of ane hare y-brent1 aboue alpings streyneþ þe flux of þe emoroide3, y-medled with white of an ey and with 4 here3 of ane hare no3t y-brent; coton of softe stuper3 y-putte aboue. And som men with þe forseid puluer alon and þe white of an ey anoynt þe emoroide3 without puttyng to of coton, and alsone ceseþ þe flux and 8 þe akyng. Witte þou þat aloe and comyn, recepте bi þe mouþe, opneþ veyneþ; and putte to with-out-forþ restreyneþ.2 þe same dop þe leke3 and þe iuyse of þam þe lefe3 of moleyne y-brissed and put to with þe white of 12 an ey streyneþ þe emoroides and heleþ þam sone. Also Iuyse of orpyne8 y-dronken with wyne heleþ al fics, without and within; wherfor it is called fics-herbe. Also lana succida y-dipped in þe iuyse of porre3;8 þe 16 lefe3 removed away, and hote putte to bolned emoroides, and when it is colde eftson3 renewed, and oft tymeþ so y-done, it is a certayne remedy agayns þe bolnyng of emoroide3; And if puluis of comyn be putte 20 þerto, it schal sped3 better. To emoroide3 y-bolned and apperand as war a chykyn torde, brisse wele blak sope with þe tendrous of moleyne4 and putte vpon; and þe þrid day þai schal no3t appere. Oile of violetta with 24 white of 3 eiren well stired to-gidre and putte to, on a wonderful maner mitigatþ þe akyng and brynnyng of þe emoroide3. Agaynþ ouer mych flux of emoroide3 and of menstrueþ þe best medicyne constrictiue and desicatyue 25 is made on þis maner. In þe best lumbarde; ynk be dissolved a gode quantiþe of gumme arabic; which dis-soluþ putte in of puluis of bole armoniac, mastic, mumme, sumak, rede coralle, bdellii, galle3, psidie, acacie, 32 anteros5 ypoquistidos subtly puluered and sarced,6 ana; and medle þam to-gidre so þat þai may be zette into þe lure by a nastare. With þis medicyne was cured Deme-triue, kyng of Perse3, of a cristen man þat was halden 36 prisoner with þe same kyng; which cristen man was made ful riche, and was sent home to cristen menneþ lande by þe comandement of þe same kyng, and many prisoners of cristen men war late go free with hym. Panis cueuli

a "leke3" overlined.
TREATMENT OF PILES BY MEDICINE.

Alleluya, i[e.] wodsour, is a treyfolge growyng vnder busche: and berelp white flourere3, is a ful sour herbe. An handfel of pis herbe without any brissyng be lapped in a lyn clouth y-wette in water and pristed out, or in lefe3 of 4 rede dok, and be it rosted vnder hote aschen pat it be no3t dryed; afterward be it draw out and brised, and put it vpon emoroi3d, or fics, or condilomata, or dede flesh, wher-so-euer it is It fretep softly & remouep al pe forseid 8 ping3, aboue any ping of pe world: per for when it may esily be had it noyp no3t for to assay. A Rial ping1 expert, pat wonderfull and happily amendepe pe errour als wele of pe first digestion as of pe seconde, and dop 12 away wicked colour & vnnatural, *and it restorepe natural colour and makepe it gode: Receipe cynamom, zinzib galang, reubarb ana; be pai subtly puluered, to which be done 3uccary 2 enenly, and breso pam to-gidre. Vse pe pacient 16 pis puluer in bygynnyng of his mete to pe we3t of 5 drams in wyne; pis medicine is profitable to pam pat hape pe emoroides, for pai ar oftyme discolored. And it is to witte pat if it may be done on gode maner per owep 20 neuer to be putte to in pe place remedie3 mitigatiue3 bot pe bodi war first mundified with farmacie, i[e.] medicyne laxatiue, as is of pe forseid mirabolan2 and floebotomye, for elle3 pe mitigatiue3 availep lest. A mitigatiue of 24 akyng to emoroi3d bolned, with prikkyng and brynnyng:—Make ane emplastre of comon malue lef3e decocete in warde and after well y-brised, with swyne grese, oile of rose putte to, or of violete, or of lilie, or of camamile, or 28 of comon oile if pe toper be no3t had. It schal be made pus: pe lefe3 of malues decocete and pe watre expressed, be pai wele fried in a pan with some of pe forseid oile3; afterward streche pam on wolle y-tesed or subtile stupe3 of 32 line, and putte pam to hote; and wonderfully it mitigatep pe akyng. If pe rote of lilie may be had and be sopen with pe forseid malue3 it schal be more effectuoues. pis emplastre is comone yno3, flor in wynter may lilye 36 rote3; be hadde when malue3 failep, and pan may pou do with pe rote al-on as it is seid of pe malue3; if pai bope may be had pe emplastre is more effectuoues. Also pe akyng and bolnyng of emoroides is mitigate with pe 3olk 40

1 experimental
2 quibus
3 regale

A soothing application for inflamed piles.

A stomachic for those who have piles.

Lily roots should be added to it.
of ane hard ey rosted, and oile of rose and crocus done to; which, y-brissed to-gidre and with wolfe putte to, it mitigatep wonderfully in euery cause. And it schal be 4 better if per be added to opium in litel proporcion. Also ane emplastre of pe white of ane rawe ey and oile of violette bette to-gidre and putte to is seid wonderfully for to be mitigatiue. Also be eiren sopen hard, and pe white 8 of pam with oile of rose or of violetz or of bope with coton be putte to hote, it cesep pe akyng of pe emoroide3 in one ni3t, and dop it away. pis is pe medycine which I, John Arderne, made, pe which I wold neuer wante, for 12 it mitigatep wonderfully euery bolnyng of emoroides, and akyng and prikkyng with brynnyng, and it dop it away: which owe to be made pus:—Recipe Moleyn and swyne; grese1 wele y-closed of pe litel skynne3 and smal y-kutted; 16 and be pai wele brissed togidre in a morter or in a basyn vnto pe grese be wele imbibed of pe iuyse; and pan lat pis grese with pe iuse stand stille 9 daie3 or more vnto pe grese shew grene; which y-se,2 eftsone sone3 be it brissed 20 with pe same iuyse, And when pe grese is perfitey imbibed and colored of pe iuyse, putte away pat pat is superflue of pe iuyse, and eftsone3 brisse pe grese without any iuyse and putte it in an erpen vessel, and kepe it to pin vse; 24 And pis medycine is called tapsivalencia. And witte pou pat pis medycine owe fro monep to monep one3 to be brissed, and in pe brissing for to putte in litel bi litel of oile of rose, or violet, or camamille, pat pe valence may 28 competently imbibe it. And if per war added to of gode popilion3 pe helpyng of pe medycyne schal be more effectual. perfor when pou hast nede for to vse perof, tak lanam succidam, if *pou may hau e it, and if pou may no3t, tak 32 oper clene tesed wolle and putte per-on of tapsivalencia with pi fynger or with a spature impressyng it, and be per made ane emplastre more or lesse after pe discretion of pe leche, and putte it on pe lure. Bot witte pou pat afore pe 36 puttyng to pat pe lure be wele fomented with a sponge y-wette in hot watre of decoction of malue3 and branne, and be it hote putte to and abide long peron. for whi; sich fomentacion availep mich more for certayne pan hote stuphis, 40 and more hidep pe rede bolnyngs and lessene3 pam, as I

Arderne's own Ointment for Piles.

The recipe for Arderne's own ointment.

Adrerne calls his ointment "tapsivalencia." It can be kept, but should be stirred once a month.

Fomentations to be used before the ointment is applied.
Fomentations for Inflamed Piles.

haue of-tyme; proved. After pe fomentacion and desiccacion of pe lure, be pe bolnyngs anointed with oile of rose chaufed in ane ostre scheH; and putte in wele with pi fynger- 
pe oile atuix pe runcle3 of pe skynne; And afterward putte 4 
to pe forseid emplastre menely chaufed, And be it bounden, 
at pe falle nojt away, with lynne clout; and a girdel 
atuix pe bottokke3, as it is seid in pe fistule3. And with-
in one ni3t pe akyng schal be cessed. pis medicyne, for-

The remedy is “sovrán” for piles.

but the leech should know of others.

Fomenta-

tions for inflamed piles.

Hippocrates quoted.

Infamed 
piles should 
be lanced 
freely

and it shoult be kept in place with a bandage.

1 Sed tamen bonum est plena acire leniora.

2 et tmo 
columbino.

3 sient multi 
stolidi 
faciunt.

4 vel furfu-
ris conli.

5 vesice, ac 
spinall 
medullae.

6 super 
lanan.
and enoyntyngs vnto þe bolnyng; and þe akyng; vtterly defaile. If þe leche, forsoþ, may noþt wrik þus, make he þe pacient for to be fleobotomed of þe vtter veyne; of þe 4 legge; in the euynge as it is seid afore. Also if þe leche se any men haue aboute þe lure without rounde bolnyng3, in þe ende* of which appereþ blak spotteþ, witte he þan for certayn þat in þam is blak cluttered b blode; which 8 forsoþ yknowen, be þer done *fomentacions and enoyntyng3. And afterward tarye noþt þe leche for to opne with a launcet þe forseid bolnyng3 in þe place of þe blaknes—þe pacient noþt wittynge—ffor þe pacient schal fele no greuance þer-of; I haue proued it forsoþ oft-tyme; And with þis cure al-on I haue sene ful many for to haue be cured for euermore, and þat riȝt sone. ¶ And be þe lech war þat none of þam þat standeþ about perceyue when he 16 opneþ with þe lancet or sich oþer þing sich maner bolnyng3. ffor if barbourþs knowe þis doyng þai wold vsurpe þis cure, appropriaþd it to þamself vnto vnworþship and noþt litel harme of maystreþ; ¶ If any man, forsoþ, haue as it war 20 purseþ1 aboute þe lure withoute, hyngynge in maner of a welked gri[pe], which ar wonte for to bifalle of inflacion and ouer miche extension of emoroides had afe; þan if þe pacient consent þe lech may without peril e kutte away 24 with a lancet or a rasour al þo þurseþ, first y-bond with a þrede, and afterward sone hole þam with vngvento arabico. 16. A nd for þat þai þat hape þe emoroides hape oft-tyme a sekeneþ; þat is called tenasmon, þerfor 28 here we make mencion þer-of. Tenasmon is a sekeneþ within þe lure þat makeþ þe pacient for to desire purgyng of his womb bynep-føre; ffor it semþ hym euermore þat he miȝt haue egestion, and when he comeþ to þe 32 priuè he may noþt haue egestion. ¶ Cause of þis sekneþ bene som tyme emoroides hid within þe lure, or pustuleþ; or excoriacions in longaon, or for chynnynge of longaon2 which ar called ragadie, or for hote humour imibed in 36 longaon, or for þat cold humour is inuistate þer, or for apostemeþ, or for vlcereþ, or for takyng of laxatiue medi-cyne. Signeþ of hote cause in thenasmon bene hoteneþ, brennyng, and prikkeþng. Signeþ of coldneþ is þat cold is

---

Tenesmus;

Definition.

Causes are
piles, ulcer-ation, purga-tives, or chronic con-stipation.

Thrombosed piles should be incised.

The treatment by incision should be kept secret lest the barbers get to know of it, to the de-triment of the Master Surgeons.

---

* leaf 162, back
Treatment of Cutaneous Piles—Tenesmus.

The signs and symptoms of Tenesmus.

feled in that place, and it is helpid of hotene3. ¶ If it be for apostemes, per is grete akyng & greuous. ¶ And if it be for vleere3, per is gret akyng when any-þing is putte þer-in. And if it be for emoroides, per appereþ bolnyng and inflacion and akyng in þe veyne3 þat ar about þe circle of þe lure. And if it be for feceþ, it is known for þer was in 8 it Diagredium or scamonic or pulpa coloquintidis or aloe. ¶ And if it be for outward cause, it is known by schewyng of þe pacient. ¶ Pronosticacion is þis: If þat þe thenasmon last long, it bringþ to þe colik and iliaca passion, 12 and to vnslepyng and feblenes of vertu, and malice of þolyng, and to passions of þe heued, and to swownynyg. And cause of þise is continuell akyng. ¶ If it be for outward cause, Sitte þe pacient in ane hote bath of swete watre with oleo laurino and sich oper hote apertyue3. ¶ And if it be for aposteme and þe bodye be plettórik, be þer made fleobotomeye of basilica ; And if þe apostems be hote, be þer made clisterie of iuyse of endythee, scariole, 20 coriandre, oyle of rose and white of an ey. After þat þe sekene3 hap proceded, be þer added to þise henne3, grese fresch, and þe dusty meel of þe milne, and a litel hony. And al þise be giffen leuke in acte. *And if þe aposteme be cold fro þe bigynnyng, be þer made ane oyntment of þe iuse of apii and oyle of rose, and camamille, and branne, and iuse of caule3. After þat þe sekene3 haþ proceded, be þer added to fenigreke and lynnesede, and be þai ministred euermore hote in acte. ¶ Witte þou þat in thenasmon þer is notþing more pro-fitable þan þettyng in by a clisterie of gotè3 mylke ; And if þou haue noþt gotè3 mylke, tak cow mylk, and put þer-to a subtile whete meel, and boile þam togidre in maner of children pappe; addþ þer-to þe raw zolk of an ey in þe decoecion, and a litel fresch schepeþ grece after þe lique-faccion, and cole it, and putte in hote bi a clisterie; þis, 36 forþop, is mych mitigatyue. ¶ Also þe zolk of a raw ey tempered with bole armóniac to sich þikknes þat it may by a clisterie be þette into þe lure, ceseþ at þe best thenas-

1 et similibus calidis aperitivis.
2 et omnibus dentitur actu tepida.

Clysters of goat’s milk.

* leaf 163]

¶ Witte þou þat in thenasmon þer is notþing more pro-fitable þan þettyng in by a clisterie of gotè3 mylke ; And if þou haue noþt gotè3 mylke, tak cow mylk, and put þer-to a subtile whete meel, and boile þam togidre in maner of children pappe; addþ þer-to þe raw zolk of an ey in þe decoecion, and a litel fresch schepeþ grece after þe lique-faccion, and cole it, and putte in hote bi a clisterie; þis, 36 forþop, is mych mitigatyue. ¶ Also þe zolk of a raw ey tempered with bole armóniac to sich þikknes þat it may by a clisterie be þette into þe lure, ceseþ at þe best thenas-

*a “flying” overlined.
mon; and pis haue I proued oft tyme. ¶ If tenasmon be for ragadias i.[e.] chynnyng,a within pe lure, cure pe ragadias and thenasmon schal be cured. ¶ A remedie agayn3 thenasmon of what every cause it be, after Bernard of Gordon, capito de thenasmon; Recipe fenigrec, semen lini, malue bismalue, camamille, mellilote, i.[e.] pe croppe3 of caule, ana; be pai brissed and boiled in watre vnto mene pikkene3, and be it coled, and be it warme cast in by a litel clistery. ¶ for, for certane, outward fomentacions and suffumigacions profitep no3 so mych as medicyn3 putte in by a clistery, and pat haue I of tyme proued.

12 ¶ Agayn3 greuous ychyng and unsuffrable in pe lure take pe iuyse of celydome,1 of moleyne, ana, hony scomyd als mych as of pe iuyse3, and boile pam togidre to pe wastyng of pe iuyse3; after sette it downe fro pe fyre and kepe to 16 vse. When pou wilt vse per-of agayn3 ychyng, tak per-of als mych as pou wilt and putte per-to of puluis of vitriol combuste and alum combuste and oprement, and if nede be boile it agayne vnto it be an vntement halldyng fast yno3, and putte a litel per-of into pe lure agayn3 pe ychyng, and sone it schal cese, and in every party of pe body for certay[n]. And pis oyntment is called tapsimel, of tapsi-barbasti b & melle c; fflorsope pis is a noble oyntment.

24 ¶ Ragadias may we no3 cure bot if we bryng in medicyn3 within pe lure, ouper with clistery or with suppository; ¶ for medicyn3 putte without-forpe profitep ouper litar or no3. Wherfor first it byhoue[p] for to wirch with corro-

32 siue; to pe mundisiying, and afterward with consolidatyue3 and desiccatiue3, as it is seid afore of pe emoroides hyl within pe lure. ¶ Agayn3 ragadias, after maister Richard in micrologio suo, Recipe oile made of eiren, or oile of rose, & white of ane ey raw, and iuyse of lyuane,2 & cimbalarie d ana; medle pam togidre & put pam in. ¶ Agayn3 ragadias within pe lure be made sicch ane oyntment after Gilbertus; Recipe oile of rose and of violett3 ana ʒij gote3 or schepe3 talow ʒiss. be pai al molten togidre at pe fire, and sette pam doune, and mone it continuily with

a "cleuyng" overlined.
b "moleyn" overlined. c "hony" overlined.
d "pennyworte" overlined.
TREATMENT OF PROLAPSE OF THE RECTUM.

A spature; and when it is almost cold putte in puluer of R. triasanalorum 3ss. and medle hem togidre; it helpe wonderfully. Also oule of linsede putte in availed agayn; he forseid seken3; it is forso p r3t desiccatye.

17. Gayn3 goyn out of pe lure: If vertu and age suffre be per fyrst y-done fleobotomy of pe vter sophene of pe legge; Afterward be per done suffumigacion or fomentacion of galt, or of pe rynde of a grene oke or dry; 8 of pe rynde of pome-granate pat is called psidia, and of pe floure3 of granate pat ar called balauystia; of pe rote of cam- fery decocte in rayne watre. And if it be in somer pise may be added to, or elle3 by pam selfe: verucyne, moleyne, 12 plantane, gawel, psillium, iuyse of coriandre, berberiz, porcelain, bursa pastoris, rede rose, tanesey, wormode, horsmynt, and sich ope stingike. Of pise of which pou may haue best make ane hote fomencyng with rayne or rynnyng watre, vinegre added perto; And after pe fomencyng be sprenkled aboue puluis of bole, of sanguis draconis, of herte3 horne combuste, bark-duste, psidie, balauystia, mumme and sich like. Afterward, if it may be done on any maner, be pe longaon putte into his place, and be it fast bondyn with warlyne; And it go not out. Also agayn3 goyn out of pe lure be it fomented with watre of decoction of caule3, and after anoynt it with aloe and vnquentum vetus broken togidre. Also agayn3 pe goyn out of pe lure,chaufe or make hote apostolicon; which chaufed, be longaon touched with it, and alsone it schal entre agayn. If it be nede do it oftyme3 when it go out; 28 Afterward be it bathed in watre of plantane, of porre3, of peritory, or of peritorye alon. With pis medicyne was kyng henry of ynglond cured of pe goyn out of pe lure.

18. Be a leche wele purued pat he haue a couenable instrument for clisty3 to be ministred; pat is pat he haue a pipe of tree, namely of box, or of hesel pat availep mych, or of salowe, to pe length of 6 ynche3 or 7 with on hole 36 alon; ffor old men vsed pipes holed in pe side. Bot witte pou for certayne pat, as I haue lered be experience, a pipe with one hole availep more, and zettep better in pe
liqore. \* Afterward haue he a swyne\^ bledder, or a nete\^ bledder, no\^t blowne to myche, which \^pou schalt preparate \^bus for to be kept. Take \^pe forseid swyne\^ or 4 nete\^ bledder when it is dry, and putte \^perin a sponeful of comon salt, of water als mych, of hony als mych as of watre; latte \^pam be dissolved togidre in \^pe bledder by tuo daies naturale, And euery day tuyes or pries be \^pe 8 bledder turned or shaken about, pat it may be wette of \^pe liquore on euery side. Afterward be \^pat putte out \^pat is \^per-in, and be \^pe bledder blowne, and be \^pe mouth bonden \^pat \^pe wynde go no\^t out, and hyng it in 12 ane vmbrose\^ place \^vno \^pat \^per be had nede \^per-of. his preparacion, forso\^p, kep\^p \^pe bledder fro corrupcion long tyme, And fro fretyng of worme\^, and make\^p \^pe bladder strong and able to \^pe vse of the forseid werk.

\* Be \^pe clistrye made \^per after my maner, for it is l\^st bot no\^t lesse effectuale. Many \^pings bene profitable to \^pe confeccion of clisteries, if \^pe lech mi\^t haue al redy. Bot oft-tyme \^pe leche may no\^t fynde in euery place al \^ping; 20 necessary to hym; \^per for it schal no\^t vnworship\^ a lech for to spede profitabily with fewer pings and li\^st. Old leche\^, forso\^p, ordeyned costiuoi\^, greuou\^s and li\^st, and \^pai putte in cassiam fistulam, mirobalan\^, rerepigre 24 and \^oper laxatine\^; which \^clisterie\^, forso\^p, after \^pair receuyung, made \^pe paciente\^ more constipate, i.[e.] en-\^costyued, \^pan \^pai war before; And \^per for long tyme\^ and oft tyme\^ I haue proued and bene experte a li\^ster maner 28 of clystryng and more effectuous, as wele in childre and wynmen as in men, als wele in 30ng men as in olde men; And in diuere case\^ as in wounded men, constipate\^ men, and febrous men, and in colica \& yliaca. And I spedde 32 effectuously with sich a clistre \^pat is \^per made. \* Recipe malue\^; comon\^ and grene camamille, or drye if \^pou may haue it, and brisse \^pam a litel, and sethe \^pam in watre \^vno \^pe watre become grene; \^pan tak whete brannte als 36 myche as suffic\^p, and putte it to \^pe forseid herbis and boile it a litel; afterward cole it, and to \^pe colyng adde to ane handful of salt and clene hony or oile; and be al wele

\^schadowye\^ overlined. 2 \^ne schame\^ overlined. 3 \^i. of gret cost\^ overlined. 4 \^costyue\^ overlined.

his apparatus for giv-\^ing enemata.

His method of preparing the bladder.

The simpler the enema the better.

Prescription for a very simple enema.
Useful Ingredients for Clysters.

Salt and water are really enough for an enema.

Honey useful in clysters.

Herbs to be used in clysters, and salt in moderation.

Clysters require skill.

Arderne's methods better than those of the Lombards in London.

resolved, mouyng it with a spature or with pi hande; pis confection, forsoþ, may be kept by a fourtyniþt if it be nede. ¶ If malueþ, forsoþ, or camamiH may noþt be hadde, with water & branne and salt without any oper 4 ping pe forseid nede schalt be sped wele ynoþt for certayn. Þor whi; for certayne if a lech wanted at oper ping3, with water alon & salt boiled togidre and 3ette in by a clistrye-bringep out squirballeþ.

Bot witte þou þat þis bene necessary to þe confection of clistrieþ, þat is to sey, Hony, oile, butter, salt, swyne3 grese, sope white and blak, oile of camamiH, oile of rwe, & oile of malueþ, sanguis veneris, &c. Of which forseid 12 white sope may euer more be necessary to a leche, for it y-putte in þe forseid decoccione and þer schaken wele with þe hande mych strengthþ þe clistrye; and þis may euer more be had redy. Also hony when it may be hadde 16 dope grete help in every clistrye. ¶ þis bene herbeþ necessary to þe werk of clistrye, scilicet Violette, malueþ, camamiH, mercurialis, watercresse, caule lefeþ, peritorie, &c. Of which som wircheþ mollifying, as malueþ; some 20 dissoluyng, as camamiH, peritorie, and oper. Bot wytte þou þat in clistrying þe leche owe for to augmente and lessen þe proporcion of salt after þat þe vertu of þe pacient may thole, i.[e.] suffre, for þe tendernes of longaon, and 24 after þat he sepe þe pacient strong, softe or hard for to avoiden. Þfor grete quantite of salt makeþ sone þe clistery for to haste þo þe goyng out, And mene quantite bryngeþ noþt out so sone. þerfor be þe lech waker in þis þat he 28 be noþt negligent ne folde-hardy in his wirchyng. Þfor it is werk of a perfite maistrye. Þfor þe which I haue geten ane hundrep tymeþ grete honour with lucre in diserse placeþ. Þfor whi; at London when lumbardeþ of-tymeþ ministred 32 clistrieþ on pair maner to colic men and oper men constipate, a ne myþt noþt avale, 1 I, forsoþ, with þe forseid maner of clistriyng, at þe first tyme within þe space of a forlong or of tuo, I deliuered þe pacient for certayn, our 36 lord beyng mene. ¶ When þou wilt forsoþ giffe a clistre, Tak of þe forseid decoccion half a quart at þe moste and putte it in þe bladder, and putte þe gretter ende of þe

a "encostined" overlined.

1 Ego cum predicto modoclisterijandi primo vice infra spatium unius stadii vel duorum patientem, deo mediante, delivere vel pro certo.

[Slone 56, leaf 24.]
pipe into pe bladder, and bynde it faste; and anoynyte pe forper end of pe pipe with fresch swyne; grese, or with butter, or with popilion, or with comon oile, or with hony.

4 And putte in pi fynger, anoyneted first with some of pe forseid pings, into pe lure; And alsone putte in pe pipe of pe clistre into pe lure. And pan ow pe leche for to presse pe bladder with pe liquore atuix his hondez and zette in pe liquore. And if he fynde as it war ane obstacle in pe wombe lettyng pe entryng of pe liquore, as it oftyme; falle, pan draw agayn a litel pe pipe, and he schal fele pe liquore entre, and pan zette in al pe liquore; which

12 y-zette in, make he pe pacient for to lye grouelyng aboue his bedde, and frote & robbe his wombe vpon pe nauyl with his owne hand or with anofer manne; *And enforce he hymself als long as he may for to withhold pe clisterye, 16 And when he may no longer hold it, go he to a sege made redy with a basyne standing vnder-nepe and per do his nedez. And se pe lech pe egestions, wheper it be blode or putride flamme &c, or worms or squiballe; indurate, 20 or wheper colre go out or quiter &c. And pus may pe leche be certified what is to do in every cure. ♦ Over pat pis is namely to be written, pat when pe lech ministre clistery to any man, pat in zettyng in pe liquore with pe 24 clistery pe liquor alsone stirt out vpon pe handez of pe leche, so pat pe pacient may nozt withhold it ne receyve it; and pat dure 2 daies or 3, for certayne sich a pacient is disposed to pe dep without doute, pat is if pe liquor 28 zetted in be nozt ouer scharp of pe salt. perfor be pe leche circumspecte,1 for ful seldom hane I sene pis reule faile for certayn, bot neperlesse it holdepe nozt euer, pat is if pe sekene3 go agayne to wele-fare. ♦ Also it is to 32 witte pat when pe leche hape wele clensed, bi pe clistery, pe wombe of fecez and opor superfuitez said afore, pan pro-fitep it mych for to zette in a clistery made of decoccion of maluez, if it may be hadde, and of branne and of butter 36 & oile or swyne; grese. If maluez, forsope, may nozt be had, pan be it made only of decoccion of branne and of pe toper said aboue, and be it zetted in by pe clistery.

1 "biholdyng aboute hym" overlined.
2 "or my3tynes" overlined.
The rationale of Clysters and their action.

Be pis clistry forsope made without any salt, And pan owe pe pacient for to withhold it strongly by al a nist and longer. And pis schaff conforte pe bowelle; and schal mollfien pam, and schal kepe pam fro constreyntyng vnto pai 4 be filled with new feces. Elle3, forsof, of pe voidene3 of pe bowelle; pe bowelle schuld be constipate, as I haue oft tyme sene. ¶ It is to witte pat in curacione of pe colic no medicyne so some helpe as clistry; ffor why ; pis 8 bryngep out hard squiballe3 of what evevy cause pai be withholden, And it avoidep soueranly ventsene3, and wonderfully puttep out viscose flemme & putrified. Wherfor I haue oft-tyme3 cured many paciente3 with clistry 12 without any oper medicine, And oft-tyme3 within 3 houre3. And perfor it spedef for to wirk first with a clistre in colic & yliaca passions; ffor pe lower bowelle3 avoided of pair superfluite3, pe ouer bowelle3 may more li3tly putte 16 out fro pam pair superfluite3 to pe lawer bowelle3. ¶ As auicen seip, al pe bowelle3 of a mannes wombe ar con-
tinued with venis miseraicis, out-take longaon, for longaon is no3t continued to pam. Wherfor pe lyuer may drawo 20 to hym fro ouer boweH somwhat, And by pis is it schewed pat if ane hole man bi any case be distitute of appetite of *mete and drynk, pat he may no maner ete, pat by pe infusion into pe lure by a clistrye of any 24 norischyng liquore, as of any potage or mylke of almande3 or sich oper, pe lyuer mygth draw perof to hymself and so norisch pe body. ¶ perfor witte pou pat clisterie3 no3t only availep to seke men and constipate, as of pe colic or 28 of sich oper, but it availep to al men beyng in pe febre3, als wele acue3 as crenic, i.[e.] long tyme lastyng, And to evevy inflacion of pe wombe, and to ventosite of it, and torcions, i.[e.] gryndyng. And som-tyme it availep mych 32 in som fluex3 of pe wombe; And for certayn it availep mich to hole men, constipate and no3t constipate, if pai be purged twayne at lest or 3 or four tyme3 in a zere with pe forseid clisterie3; pat is tuye in wynter, and in vere as it 36 war after lentyn one3, in somer one3, or ofter tyme if nede be. ¶ ffor why ; pe benefite of it may no man noumbre ; ffor as it helpep fair in necessite, so it preseruep pam pat vsep it fro harme & necessite : be it perfor had in reuerence.
19. [Of Atramentum or Vitriol. Of Atramentum or Vitriol.]

Also the substance of vitriole, bene many kynde; And that is better that is more grene and that is founden in pe yle of Crete; and it is called communly dragant, bot nost dragagant, for dragagant is a white gumme and clere like vnto gumme arabic. Also per is a spice of vitriol that is called vitriolum romanum, i.e. coprose; and it is of 3alow colour in reward of 2pe grenner vitriol.

And per is one of white colour bot nost schynyng, and that is seid to availe to pe cure of eisen. Vitriol is hote and drye in pe 4 degree after platear, And per ar 4 maners perof: Indicum, that is founden in ynde, and that is white; Arabicum that is founden in arabye, and that is 3elow; And ciprinum that is founden in Cipre, and that is grene; And romanum that is coprose, that is more grene is competent to medycyne. It hape strenght of dissoluyng, consunying, fretyng. It may be kep by 10 3ere effectually. Also vitriol combuste be itself or with salt combuste vputte vpon a venemyd wonde drawep pe venym fro byne vnto above. Also puluer of vitriol combuste streyneb blode in euery place if it be putte by itself or with iuyse of any herbe streynyng blode, as of rede netle, or bursa pastoris, or moleyne, or walwort. Also it is seid to availe agayns polipe in pe nose if it be putte into pe nose with a tente of coton and melle rosette medled with 3olk of an ey; it fretep superfle flesch, and putte into a fistule mortifiep it. And also it y-medled with diaquilon or apostolicon and y-put vpon fraudulent vlclep; in drye membre, it curep pam meruelously in drawyng, and mortifiep pam and fretep pam. Also if vitriol be combust it is lesse mordicatyue, but his dryne is not lessened. Florsop al spice; of vitriol bene scharp after lesse and more, and pai haue pai scharpue; in pair superficite; And when pai ar combuste pai bene exsiccatuye without grete mordicacion, and so in exsiceand pai gendre flesch, and most in drye membris and bodie; for why; Vitriol y-put to diuerse membris or diuerse membris 6 it is sene to haue diuerse effecte In drye bodie, for as coloric

[leaf 166]

1. una species,
2. in respectu viridioris.
3. Secundum Platearum
4. ab inferius ad superius
5. ulcerata fraudeo-lenta.
6. Nam vitriolum diversis corporis et apposito membris.
and malencolious; And also putte in dry membre3 when it fynde\nstrong membre3 agaynstayndyng to his strenght, \nan\nmay he no\n3 bot dry superf\nfluite3 y-founden in vlcre3\nor in wonde3; which fors\npe y-dried, nature gendere\nflesch. 4 
In moist bodie3, fors\npe, as in feumatike men and childre\nand wy\nnamen, and in moiste membre3 of pe bodie, pe membre3 bene feble and may no\n3 withstande to pe strength of pe vitriol; and so \npe\nsuffe liquefaccion of it, and so 8 
putrefaccion is augmented in pe wonde. And as it wirkep 
pus in diuerse bodie3, so wirkep it in diuerse complexions 
and diuerse membris. And it dope no\n3 pus for con-
trariou\nste of operacion \npat it hap\ne in itself, bot for 12 
contrariou\nste of complexions to which it is y-putte; As 
fire dop diuersely in dyuerse pings, \nfor whi; lede or \noper \nmetalle as bras and siluer y\nput to pe fire ar molten 
of pe fire; tyle, stone3, and erpen potte3 y\nputte to pe fire 16 
ar hardened; and pise be no\n3 done for \npat pe fire hape 
contrarious \nwirkyng in hymself, bot for contrariou\nste of 
nature of pe fors\npe ping3. * Wherfor seip galiene, if per 
be tuo pings euen in helpe, and pe tone be in a dry 20 
membre and pe toper in a moiste, \npat \npat is in pe dry 
membre nede\n3 more dry medycyne. Emplastre3, fors\npe, 
pat ar putte to membre3 Owen to be of o kynd to pe 
membrys, after Iohn Damascene: Tak of vitriol als 24 
mych as pou wilt, i.[e.] 2 vnce3 or 3 or 4, and putte 
in ane erpen potte whos mou\npe be wele stopped with 
clay distemperate \nhorse dong, \npat is called lutum sapien,\n1 
and sette it to dry; pe which y\ndried, sette a pe potte with 28 
pe vitriol among cole3, and make a softe fire by one houre; 
And after ane houre make it stronger, and blow strongly 
with belowe3 2 houre3, and after lette in pece vnto \npat pe 
fire defaile by itself. And pe potte y\ncolded, be it opned, 32 
and pou schalt fynde attrament, i.[e.] vitriol, of rede 
colour cleuyng to pe side3 of pe potte; whiche removed 
 fro pe potte, be it poudred subtilly vpon a stone, and putte 
it in a strong leper bagge and kepe it to pine vse. By sich 36 
combustion is his natural hete alterate and so it is colded, 
and so his mordicacion is dulled; wherfor it may restreyne 
blode in nose3 and wounde3 and lure and marice. Also it 

* "birye" overlined.
Alum and its Uses.

availep agayne; pe cancre and agayn3 venemous aposteme3 and fraudulent3; And to tepe or gome3 freten or gnawen medled with symple hony, or better with melle rosate; Or best if pat licium, i.[e.] iuyse of caprifoile with claresfied hony be sopen to pe pikan3 of hony, and be medled with puluer of vitriol and putte vnto pe gome3; for whi; Iuyse of caprifoile pat is called licium availep bi itself to 8 al pe vice3 of pe moupe. Also vitriol y-medled with hony and licium putte per-in helpep to vleere3 of ere3, and to pe quitour of pam and fretyng. Also vitriol combuste when it is medled with puluer of hermodactile3 and putte 12 vnder-nep pe tung it helpep to pe ranule. Ane oyntment pat availep to cancrose vleere3, and to wonde3, and to aposteme3, of which flowepe out blode, and to yuel carbunele3 pat ar called pestilenciaele3, and to aposteme3 pat 16 ar made of yuel mater, is made þus: Recipe of old swyne grese 2 ʒiiii, vitriol ʒiiii. Be þe grese molten over þe fire & be it coled, and breke long tyme þe vitriol with oile in a brazen morter, and afterward medled with þe grese over þe 20 fire, and make ane oyntment mych fruyteful. If þou wilt make it in maner of one emplastr, putte per-to wax and blak pich, for pich haþe strenght or vertu of drawyng fro part3e3 binpep to aboue, and þe same dope vitriol.

24 20. A lum zucaryne is called comonly alumgasse. It is hote b and dry c in þe 4 dege. It is a veyne of þe erþo y-knowen yno3,8 but how mych it is more clere & schynyng so mych is it better. It haþe strenght of 28 consumyng and of gretly desickyng. d It availep with hote vinegre agayn3 inflacions of þo gome3; And it availep in medicyne; agayn3 þe scabbe. Also poudre of it combuste profftep mich bi itself, or y-medled with hony, *in mundi-

32 fying of list cure3. It mundifieth, forsoþ, with a stiptikn3,4 and in pat þat5 it is stiptik it is confortatyue of membre3, for al stiptik þing3 bene repressiue of humours. þer is, forsoþe, anoper kynde of alum þat is called alumen scissum, 36 comonly alum plume, and it haþe þrede3 and it may be diuided and ryuen in sondre. And it is riþ gode, and it haþe þe same vertue3 as alum glasse. Alum glasse is

a "frog" overlined. b "calidus" overlined.
c "siccus" overlined. d "drying" overlined.

ARDERNE.
Verdigris and Arsenic.

brynt pus: Tak a tile stone or a scarpe of a potte,\(^1\) and putte it in pe midde3 of brynnyng cole3 so pat pe cole3 touch it no3t, and in pat scarpe putte pe hole pece of alun, and alsone it will melt as it war yse, and boile, and after ward it wexe3 hard; and in boilyng it will blow and wex hize in drying and wexing white. And lat it be stille so in pe fire vnto pe blowyng and boilyng vtterly cese, and to it be bro3t into ful white colour; pe which y-sene, sette 8 it fro pe fire and poudre it ful smal vpon a stone, and in a leper bag kepe it to pine vse. Water of alun is made pus: Tak a quantite of it als mich as you wilt, and breke it at pe best,\(^2\) to which be added to 8 partie3 of gode vinegre and strong, and so boile pam in a panne at pe fire vnto pat pe half parte of al-togidre be consumed. Afterward remoue it fro pe fire and cole it; And pis is called watre of alun, which avail3 agayn ychynge of scabbe of salt 16 flemne. And pis watre mundi3pei in coland, bot watre of sulphur mundi3pei in hetyng or chaufand.\(^3\)

21. Viride es i[e.] vertgre3, is hote\(^a\) and drye.\(^b\) It is ful penetratyue and dissolutyue, and it prikke3 and brynne3 and melte3, and repressi3 putrefaccion. Wharfor, after galiene, [cap.] 4 de ingenio, of wex and oile and vertgrese may be made anoyntement temperate. \(\text{ffor whi; vertgrese is ful mich penetratife, dissolutiue, pungityue, vrityue,\(^4\)}\) and liquefactyue. And al pis ar repressed and dulled of wex and oile adde to it; for sipe wax and oile moiste3 ri3t mich and gendre3 putrefaccion, pai dulle pe scharpe3 of vertgrese, And vertgrese repressi3 peir putrefaccion and 28 humeccacion; wherfor of pis bene made a temperate oyntment.

22. \(\text{Arsenic & auripigment bene bope one, bot arsenic is no3t so fair as auripigment; neper-}\) lesse bope haue a 3alow colour, but auripigment is gretter and more schynyng, and more disesy for to glynde for his predine3; for in substance he is like vnto plaistre of paris. Bot arsenic is as it war puluer in reward of auripigment, 36 and it is more ly3tly broken; And when it is broken it hape as it war vermilion within it, of rede colour and of a3our colour; which vnkunnynge men sa3t to be realgre, &

\(\text{A}\)

\(1\) Accipe unam tegulam vel testam unius ole.

\(2\) et teratur optime.

\(3\) contra pruri-

\(4\) realgre, vnto

\(a\) "calidus" overlined.

\(b\) "siccus" overlined.
Arsenic is to be used locally with caution.

Realar is not identical with Arsenic,
but there is nothing in a name.

And realgre is one artificial confection
made of alkenemistre\(^1\) bi sublimacion, as arsenic sublimed,
And for certayn pat ar nost\(^3\) different in operacion in any
4 ping, out-take pat realgre is of rede colour, and arsenic
sublimed is of white colour; but ne\(\overline{p}\)erle\(\overline{3}\) arsenic entrep in
confection of realgre, And forpi realgre is called of som
men rede auripigment: of pe name\(\overline{3}\) is no struyung so pat
8 we vnderstond pe ping. *Auripigment is hot and dry
in pe 4 degee, of which bene tuo spice\(\overline{3}\) as is seid aboue,
\(\overline{3}\)elow and rede. \(\overline{3}\)elow is more competent to vse of leche3.
It is forso\(\overline{p}\) dissolutyue, attractyue, and mundificatyue,
12 And it hape in it a vertue putrefactyue by which he
putrefie\(\overline{p}\) strange humours comyng to a wounde,
or ane vicere, pat pas may nost be assimilate, i.[c.]
liken to membre\(\overline{3}\), and engendre superfliue flesch or dede
16 flesch. Also it avale\(\overline{p}\) in mediciyne\(\overline{3}\) agayn\(\overline{3}\) pe scabbe, pe
tetre and white mortee y-medled with blak sope. And
for pat we made mencion of arsenic sublimed, perfor it is
to witte pat no leche bot if he be more exparte in cirugie
20 presume for to wirk with realgre or arsenic sublimed. flor
of pas ar bredde many disese; for pair distemperate
violence. flor for why; pat bope wirk with one maner and
violence, and pat more violently pas cautery of fire. And
24 if any man ow for to vse pas, pat owe to be putte to in
pe last quantite, for pe vertu of pas aboute fire is pe
vtttermoste of strengh,\(^2\) and pat is schewed, for pe watre of
pas fretep euery metaH, out-tak gold. Witte pou pat
28 auripigment is called comonly ortment,\(^3\) whos puluer vse\(\overline{p}\)
falconere; agayn\(\overline{3}\) pedicle\(\overline{3}\) of paire falconere. Also witte
pou pat auripigment is desiccatyue, consumptiue, euapora-
tyue, eradicatyue, putrefactiue, ruptuyue and cauteryatuyue.
32 Also witte pou pat of arsenic sublimed or of realgre, pat
one\(\overline{3}\) in a tyme in pe bigynnynge of my practi\(\overline{z}\)ing, when I
knew nost pe violence of pas, I putte of pe puluer of pe
tuo forsaid in pe legge\(\overline{3}\) of tuo men; pe which, forso\(\overline{p}\)e,
36 y-putte in, almost pei wer wode for ake bi tuo daie\(\overline{3}\) naturel
and more; And paiy legge\(\overline{3}\) war bolned out of mesure. pe
prid daie, forso\(\overline{p}\)e, pe place wher pe puluer was putte
appered of ri\(\overline{3}\)t blak colour, and pe paciente\(\overline{3}\) war so feble

\(^1\) Seeundam modum alki-
mistarum id est alkenem-
yers.

\(^2\) Quoniam virtus eorum
circa ignem
in ultimo
fortitndi-
\(^3\) orpigment

\* "lise" overlained.
Arderne's experience of an Arsenic Dressing.

pat pai war almost dede. Jan I anointed pair legge with oilie of rose or popilion, And I fomented pe leggis in hote water for to euapour yuel humours contened in pe membres; And aboue pe place I putte rawe larde kytted 4 pinne,1 with oilie of rose. Aboue pe larde putte I ane emplastre of pe zolkez of raw egggez, And stuppeze of lyne aboue for to hold pe larde. And aboue pe 9 daie pe place combuste beganne to dissolue in pe circumference and for 8 to putte out quiter. And pe place nozt reparate bot fro pe prid day to pe prid daye2 I continued euery-more pis cure in pe forseid maner, vnto pat al pe mortified flesch within was fully putte out pe which, forsof, putte out, pe bone of 12 pe leggeaappered bare with a wounde rizt horrible; pe which y-sene, I filled pe wonde of stupez y-kitte smalle, and putte pam aboue pe naked bone; and I putte in of pe zolk of a raw egg wee temperate with sanguine veneris, 16 and I filled al pe wounde per-with; and so euery day one; reparayling it vnto pe quiter biganne to cese, and pe side; of pe wounde byganne for to sonde or conglutinate. And witte pou pat when pe side; of pe wounde come to pe 20 place of pe bone cauterydide of pe arsenic, which was blakke, *pai mizt no more grewe, for pe mortified bone mizt nozt receyve nutriment, pat per mizt no flesch grew vpon it, ne be regendred. Pe which zitte sene, I, sewyng 24 pe ignorance of pe comon puple,3 euery day I schoue4 pe bare bone with instrument preparate per-to, entendyng for to gendre flesch vpon pe bare bone. And I putte to regeneratyue; of flesch, pat is to sey licium with mel 28 roorate, and puluer of aloeis, & mastiike, and mirre, sarcocoH, san. draconis, and pai profited noping. Neperlez pe schauying euery day continued in pe maner of ydiotez, as I seid afore; a daye, as I schoue pe forseid bone, pe 32 bare bone vnder pe instrument moued vp and downe; pat, forsof, perceyued, I meruailed ouer mesure, neperlez I perceyued of pat pat pe schauying of pe bone profited noping: fro pan forpe I lefte pat werk, and I putte noping 36 ellez in pe wounde bot licium with melle roosate and zolk of a raw aye ynedled togidire, with carped stupez of lyne, and so fro day to day continuyn g vnto pe forseid bone,

a "schine" overlined.

his treatment of them.

The tibia died.

[ leaf 168]

and a sequestrum formed,

which Arderne did not notice for some time.

1 apposui lardum crudum tenue incisisum.
2 de 3 in 3—.
3 Quo adhuc viso, ignor-antiam vulgi prosecuteus.
4 Abrasi.
Licium and its Uses.

85

flesch growyng vnder-nepe appered hizer pan pe extremite; of pe wounde, and was made more mouncable and more; pe which ysene, I putte pe poynct of a knyfe vnder pe side 4 of pe bone and I raised it a litel, and al pe bare bone stirt out, and rede flesch had filled al pe space where pe bone laye, and blode went out. pat bone, forsope, had in length 4 ynche; and 2 in brede; in piknez, forsope, it was drawne 8 out almost vnto pe merewgh of pe bone; And pis was in pe schyne bone. After pe seperacion, forsope, of pe bone, I cured finaly pe wounde with licium and mel rosate and raw 30lk of an ey and puluer sine pari. And pe pacient 12 recovered wonderfully his goyng; he was, forsope, a 30ng man. And as it felle on pe tone man, one pe same maner felle it of pe toper. And witte you pat I putte noxt of puluer of arsenic in pe legge; of pe forseid men ouer pe 16 quantite of a corne of senvey,1 and neperlesse pe wonde; pat come of pe arsenyng passed fully pe lengthe and pe brede of a mannez hande. Perfor vnexperte men be wele war fro pe vse of realgre and arsenic sublimed, and namely in 20 pe face and pe legge; and synowy place; and bony, and in a mannez zerde, and in pe lare; for bot if pai haue grete resistance pai wirke ful cruelly. 23. [L]icium is pe iuyse of caprisoile, pat is called wode-24 bynde, and it growe in wode; and wynde strongly aboute tre3; and it ha long flour3; and it bere swete rede berie3. Licium curep pe canker in pe marice and in oper inward membre3, for it ha pe vertu mundificatyue, 28 consolidatyue, and confortatyue, and regeneratyue of flesch in a bare bone and in schynne bone3; and it ha pe vertu mundificatyue of putrefyng of pe bone. And generaly it availep in al fretyng sekene3, as in cancre, lupe, fistule, 32 and noli-me-tangere. And agayne pe cancre in pe moupe licium is a principal medicyne, boiled with hony vnto pe piknez of pe hony. And it may be pus made: pe iuyse schal be pressed out and sette to pe son for to dry vnto 36 pat it may be puluerized. And pis puluerized availep to derke eizen, putte in pe eiz, and forpi is called oculus lucidus. *Bot it may be made profitably oper wyse, availyng to ful cause of cirurgie, & pat pus: pe iuyse of caprisoile pressed 1 "a mesterd sede" overlined.

He removed the dead bone and the wound quickly healed.

The second case was similar.

Licium or juice of woodbine.

Its uses.

Various preparations:

powder is good for the eyes,

[* leaf 168, back]
The preparation of Pulvis sine pari.

The juice with honey for the mouth, and for ulcers everywhere.

It is extracted with wine instead of water, and is then used for foul ulcers.

Arderne used it successfully on a great man.

Pulvis sine pari, its constituents

and preparation.

The reason for its name;

its uses,

out of itself, be it boiled with also mich of clarified hony vnto pe wasyng of pe iuyse, and be it kepte vnto vse. And pis avalep to pe cancre in pe moupe, and in pe lure, and in pe marice, and al cancre sol vlcere3 and fraudulent3 4 of legge3. If pe iuyse, forsope, may no3t li3tly be pressed out for pe pikne3, als it fallep, oft tyme, pan be pe lefe3 watred with gode white wyne or rede, and pan may pe iuyse li3tly be pressed out. ffor whi; witte pou pat capri-8 foile owe no3t to be waschen with watre afore pe brissying, and moste when per owe to be made licium to cure3 of pe eizen, Bot if it nede alwai3; to be wette, be it no maner done with watre bot with wyne, as it is seid. Also lefe3 12 of caprifoile brissed by pam-self and with al his substance without medlyng of any oper ping, putte vpon vlcere3 of legge3 desperate & stynkyng, and puttyng out foule blode, and growyng hiz3 to maner of a cancre, and vnobedient to 16 any medicyne, curep pam happily and meruelously. And pis proued I in pe legge of a grete man hauyng a pustle, In curyng of which al medicyne3 defailed; and with pis was he cured. ffor whi; pe first tyme pat it was putte to 20 it dried pe fistule, and did away pe stynkyng and al pe yuel accident3, and within a monep he was plenarely cured. 24. [P]uluis sine pari, or french Poudre san3 pere, is made þus: Recipe auripigment. parte 1, pat [is] þii; vert-24 grese ana, or after som men partes ij; Of vitriol combuste, or no3t combuste, als mich as of bope pe forseid; Alum þucarine combust, or no3t combuste, als mych as of al pe forseid. Ich on of pise bi pamself be ful subtily grouden 28 on a stone, pe which were y-growden, be pei eft-some grouden al to-gidre vnto pai be ri3t wele medled; and putte pam in leper bag, and kepe to vse: pis may be kepte bi a 3ere and longer, and pat in gret effecte. pis poudre 32 is seid “without pere” ffor it hape no pere in wirchyng; ffor why; it mortisfiep and bryngep out dede flesch or superflicue or putred in al wonde3 and vlcere3. And witte pou pat pis puluís bigilep neuer pe paciente ne pe cirurgene, 36 for it döp not wickedly. ffor whi; if pe cirurgene bene vnkunnyng and putte pis puluís in a wonde or in ane vlcere no3t hauyng dede flesch, it döp none harme to pe wonde or pe vlcere; bot without any oper help it schal 40
at the best be conglutinative, dissipative, and satyruine of the wound; but never lesse nost without mordicacion. for, for certayne, if this pulius was not mordiactué it schuld in prise passe al medicyne. the use of this pulius is sich; when this pulius is putte in a wounde or in ane vulner; be per putte to it, without any ping atuix, cotone or stupæ; of lyne cutte smalle with schere; and pan aboue this fat be put aboue emplastre Nerve or anofer, and be it bounden, and so latte it be wipout remouyng by two nyghtes. *After this tyme, forsop, when pou remoue; pe emplastre and pe coton or pe stupe; putte aboue pe pulius. If this pulius putte in go willfully out with pe dede flesch this nede is wele sped. pan owe pou for to putte in pe hole of pe vulner or of pe wounde a drop or two of sanguis veneris, with stuppe; of lyne or coton, vnto pat pe hole be eff-16 sone; replete with flesch. And if, forsop, in pe first remouyng this pulius putte in come not; willfully out with pe mortified flesch, pan ow pe lech for to putte o droppre or two of sanguis veneris upon this pulius in pe wounde or 20 pe vulner, and aboue coton or stuppe; of lyne, as it is seid. And aboue al-togidre pe emplastre Nervebone; and so lat it abyde by a naturale day or more after pe estimacion of pe discrete leche. And when pe dede flesch go out of pe vulner or of pe wounde, be it repaired as it was seid afore. And to a leche be this a reule, pat pulius corrosuyue be neuer remoued in a wounde or ane vulner byfor pat it wille willfully go out. Also per is anofer reule in which I haue 28 sene erre in my tyme almost al men not practizours bot foæ; pat is to say of pe ofte remouyng of woundes or vulner. Siche operacion, for sope, spedep nost, bot lettep couenable effecte of curyng. And pat by this reson, for 32 natural hete in pe body, which is principal actour of curyng, expire 1 out of ofte remuyng of a wounde or of ane vulner, and so is letted digestion of humours comyng to pe wounde or to pe vulner, Wherfor per may nost be 36 nade generacion of quitour and, by sewyng, ne purgyng of pe wounde. Wherfor superflue humours rennyng to pe wounde ar gedred togidre and ar holden stil more and more; wherfor pe boluyng in pe wounde is augmented

---

1 "brepe" overlined.
Various practical points in the treatment of Wounds.

and, by sewyng, pe ake; for pe tone is occasion of pe toper. Wherfor pe wounde or pe vlcere waxe hard and foule, and for pe quitour pat it owed of right to putte out, it sende out watry humour & venemous, and so ofte-tyme 4 of list hurtynge ar made incurable yuile3. Also per is anofer error in ofte remeuyng of woundes or of vlcere; so as seip philosophre3, aier changep pe body and by consequens pe wounde, and pat may be proved by ex-8 perience. pe brep of a menstruous woman noye3 vnto woundes if sche neyen nere; Or of pe lech if he haue liggen with his wife or with anofer woman menstruate, or if he haue eten garleke or onyons. Bot be pis maner of 12 wirchyng boldly holden, pat a lech be content only of one reparatione in pe day, pat is if he haue pe medicyne3 contened in pis boke. sfor when he seepe a wounde or anofer vlcere were cast out quitour, and pe bolnyng for to vanyshe 16 away, and pe akyng for to be cessed, and pe membre for to come agayne to pe first habite and colour, helpe is at pe dore if pe pacient be we[le] governed, i.[e.] if he slepe wele in nijtes. In slepe, forso3, nature wirkep 20 better aboute digestion of every mater beyng in pe body or in pe membris. Bot for pat slepe is oftyme letted of akyng, perfor bfore al ping3 be it laboured pat pe akyng be cessed. sfor akyng3 afor al oper ping3 24 nopt only presse3 downe vertue3 of pe body but also of pe medicyne3. And pat ping soueranly mitigatep oyle of rose in hate cause, or oile of camamille in cold cause, for it is hate and resolutyue, of which it schal be seid after-28 ward. Also ane emplastre of hony and branne and a litil vinegre fried togidire mitigatep 1 every akyng for certayne. And witte pou pat pe ping3 pat ar putte aboue makep to pe closyng-in of naturale hate and excludyng of pe aie. Be 32 pise ping3 seid afor of remeuyng of woundes and vlcere3 comended wele to mynde; And be it done boldly as it is seid, sfor oftyne3 in many case3 I was nopt wount for to remoue bot fro pe prid day into pe prid day, and pat 36 namely in hurtynge of pe schyame3; and I sped wele, And I cured many hard ping3 and forsaken of oper men with pis pulu3 sine pari and oper emplastre3 y-named. And I

1 "ese3" overlined.
Pulvis sanguis veneris.

saw never in all my tyme pis forseid puluis defaile, out-take in pe legge of a gre man in which it migt noyt haue no strength of wirchynge as it was wont for to haue in ope; wherfor I was hugely astoned, bot nepere; I heled hym wele with grene licium putte per-to, our lorde beyng mene, as it is seid aboue.

25. [A]nd for pat many men couaitep for to here name of oil; and of emplastre; and of oyntement, perfor I haue putte pair name; to pam. One for pe rednes and sweetnes is called sanguis veneris. Of french, forsope, for ladie; is called sank damours or sank de pucell, for why; venus was called gode; of luffe.

Sanguis veneris ow pus to be made: Receipe puluis of alcannet 3. and putte it in a quart of conom oile, and pe oile schal become rede to likne; of blode, where it be boiled at pe fire or noyt, for it may be made on bope maners; and be it kept to vse in ane erpen potte or a pewdre potte. pis maner of confeccion of sanguis veneris is riȝt gode for pe alkenet pat is cold and drye in pe first or second gre. for pis alkenet consumep humidite; of wounde; and of vlerce; for it is subtiliatyue and resolutyue without mordicacion, and carminatyue & appertyue, and exsiccatyue with stiptikne. Wherfor it is gode in hote aposteme; with litel mater in pe bygynnynge, for it is cold and drye and perfor it is repercussyue and exsiccatyue of hote aposteme. Also it helpe to synues and iuncture, and vlerce; of pe mouye in drying. And it medled with vinegre & ynoynted helpe to pe akyng of pe heued. Sanguis veneris helpe wele, and purgep, and defendep fro drede depe wounde; made wyth knyfe ore arow, and holow vlerce; if it be putte in with stuppe; of lyne, And emplastre Nerbone putte aboue, And it dope al ping; pat pertenep to cure of a wounde or of aposteme, and pat in a fair maner.

Bot witte pou pat Sanguis veneris may be made on anope maner, and pat to noble men, if pe lech may haue in tyme of his confection al pings necessarie vnto his confection, pat is to sey pe blode of a maiden virgyne or of a maiden damisel about 19 or 20 yere, which was neuer impregned,1 pof sche be corrupte; for now in pis tyme; 1 "with child" overlined.
virgine; come p ful seldome to 20 3ere. Which blode ow to be drawn out in p ful of p mone, p mone beyng in virgine and p sonne beyng in piscib3. Also it bihou p p lech haue to pis confection aloes, & mirre, & sanguis 4 draconis, and puluis of alkenet. And pus is it made: Recipe blode of a maid, as it is seid afore, to p which alsone after p drawyn out, or it be cold, medle puluis of aloes cicotrine, mirre, sanguis draconis ana 3/1 or 2 or 3, 8 after p quantite of p blode; of subtile puluis of alkenet als mich as of al p toper. And al pise, forsope, be wele medled with p blode in maner of a paste, and afterward dry it at p se son: when it is drie kepe it to pine vse. 12 When pou wilt, forsope, vse p erof, tak a party of it or al, and poudre it wele, and se p it in grene oile of olyue; als mich as suffice p; pat is to ane vnce of p forseid confection pou ow to putte 2 lb. of oile, pat is a quart of a galon, 16 or more if it be nede, and boile pam togidre vnto pat p oile appere rede; which beyng rede, putt it of p fire, (sette it of p fire) and kepe it to pine vse. And when it is boiled cole it no 3t bot lat it abide with p oile, for it will 20 satle in p grounde, and so it will streng pe p medicyne. 26. [A] u ointment pat is called Salus populi is made pus: Recipe celidon M ij, edere terestris 1 M. i, and brysse pam togidre; and afterward take herte; 24 talow or schepe 3 talow or bope, als mych as suffice p to p quantite of p herbe 3; And of oile of olyue als myche als half of p talow; and boile al with p forseid herbe 3 vnto pat p herbe 3 go to p grounde of p vessel and be made 28 blak; afterward cole pam and lat pam cold, and kepe it to vse. Pis ointment is hard, and forseid when it is nede to vse it take of it and putte in ane holow oistre schelle and melt it aboue cole 3, or aboue a brynnyng candel; And 32 wher pat nede is anoyte p erwith. And witte pou pat it ow no 3t to be putte in wounde 3 or vclere 3 bot only about pam withoutforpe, pat is if p skynne about p wounde be flaien or skalded of hete, or if it haue many pusche: 2 36 & smale, white or rede or blak; pan be p skyn first wel fomented with a sponge & hote watre, And after pat it is

1 "hayhoue, folesote, horshoue" overlined.
2 "blaynej" overlined.
Emplaster of Narbonne.

dried be it anyoynted with pis anoynctment hote aboue pe place flaie or pusched, And alsone without any ping atix: if it be nede in grete case3 pou may anyoynte it 4 aboue with vnguento arabico or with comon vnguento albo for to kele it more strongly and dry.

Salus populi, forsoþ, dryþe wele and sicatriþeþ, and it availeþ at pe best to lippe3 y-brent of pe sone or chynned 8 of pe wynde, and to legge3 and fete and ñande3; and it availeþ agaynþ brynnyng of fire, and it quenchþ pe wild fire after pe fallyng of pe pusche3. þis oynctment wold I neuer wante for many benefete3 of it, And witte þou pat 12 it is best remedi to þam þat hape þe emoroides or þe fistule or þoper sleiyng.

27. [A]ne emplastre þat is called Nerbone is made þus: Recipe diaquilon, and with comon oile or with olleo siriaco 16 resolue it vp[on] þe cole3, and boile it alwaie3 with a spatulre vtto it bigynne to wex blak. And if þou wil haue it riþt blak boile it langer, and if þou wilt haue broune boyle it lesse. þfor whi; by long boilyng it may 20 be made most blak without medlyng of any þoper þing. And after þat þou wilt haue it hard or softe be added þerto, or minusched, oile with which it is resolued. When it hap boyled ynoþ sette it fro þe fire and late it stande 24 stille without mouyng by þe space of a 'pater noster' & 'auë maria,' þat þe litarge of þe lede þat is in it may descende to þe grounde; and alsone be þit sette out softly into anoþer panne þat þe litarge be noþt sette out withal, 28 and þan moue it with a spature strongly vtto þat þit be colded. When, forsoþ, it is cold þat it may be malaxed, conforme þerof trocisþes vpon a table in quantite as it pleseþ þe, and kepe it to þine þere. þis emplastre is called Noir- 32 bone, for þoþ-al it be blak neþerlesse it is gode, for it heleþ wele wondeþ and vlcereþ, and it is wele cleuyng þo, and it matureþ wele apostemeþ and bresteþ þam in any place of þe body.

36 28. [O]leum Siriacaem is þus made: Recipe comon malueþ of gardyneþ, fatte & fresch, and somewhat brisse hem in a morter, And after boile hem long in comon oile bot noþt vtto þe consumeþng of þe herbe, þat þe fatnes of
and plaiest.

\[\text{if malue}\vphantom{3} \text{be no}\vphantom{3} \text{t consumed. And if you wilt make it }
\]

\[\text{pikke to maner of ane emplastre, \text{pan ow you for to putte with }
\]

\[\text{pe oile as war }\text{prid parte of schepe3 talow, and boile }
\]

\[\text{hem togidre as it is seid, and kepe it to vse.}
\]

29. \text{Vnguentum arabicum, Tapsimel (in pe last end of emoroide3), Diaflosmos: seke hem in pe tretys of pe }

\[\text{fistule3.}
\]

30. \text{Puluis grecus is }\text{bus made: Recipe auripigment, ci- 8 }

\[\text{trin. piper. nigri, calcis viue, alphice, i.[o.] barlymele ana, }
\]

\[\text{hony clarified partes iii, vinegre }\text{pe ferpe parte; be pai }
\]

\[\text{medled with pe forseid poudre3 in maner of paste, and be }
\]

\[\text{per made a kake }\text{perof, and be it baken on a hote tyle 12 }
\]

\[\text{stone ouer pe fire so }\text{pat it be no}\vphantom{3} \text{t brennt bot pat it may }
\]

\[\text{be wele poudred vpon a stone. And when it bigynnej }
\]

\[\text{to wex blak on pe tile-stone be it ofyme turned pat it be }
\]

\[\text{no}\vphantom{3} \text{t brennt bot pat [it] be perfitley dried. With pis puluis 16 }
\]

\[\text{haue I cured sich fike3 puttyng out blode, & growyng in }
\]

\[\text{pe palme of a manne3 hand. And if you have no}\vphantom{3} \text{t puluis }
\]

\[\text{grecus you may do pe same in pe forseid pings with puluis }
\]

\[\text{sine pari. And wytte you }\text{pat I haue oft tymne sene puluis 20 }
\]

\[\text{grecus for to availe in pe cancre of a manne3 zerde, and in }
\]

\[\text{fike3 bredyng per-about.}
\]

31. \text{[O]ile of rose3 is }\text{bus made: Recipe roses pat }

\[\text{bene ful spred, and gredre hem erly while3 24 }
\]

\[\text{pe dew laste\vphantom{3} and clyppe hem with a paire [of] schere3 }
\]

\[\text{in smale pecys and do hem into a glasen vessel, and do }
\]

\[\text{pero oile of olyue of pe grenest }\text{pat you may fynde, ana, }
\]

\[\text{& medle hem wele togidre in pi vessel and stoppe it wele; 28 }
\]

\[\text{And hete it agayn3 }\text{pe son 20 daie3 and }\text{pan draw it pur3 }
\]

\[\text{a kanu3 and cast away pe grounde3 of pe rose3, And putte }
\]

\[\text{pat liquour pat comep out into a vessel a3eyn and stoppe }
\]

\[\text{pe vessel }\text{pat per come none aier out. And ich day in pe 32 }
\]

\[\text{monyng when you schalt hyng out pe potte tak a spature }
\]

\[\text{of tre and opne pe potte and stirre it wele, and stoppe it }
\]

\[\text{agayne duryng al pe 20 daies.}
\]

\[\text{Anoper maner [of] makyng, and more colde. Recipe 36 }
\]

\[\text{rose3 & oile ana, and schred pi roses and putte hem into }
\]

\[\text{a vessel of glasse with pine oile, and stoppe it wele. And }
\]

\[\text{hang it into a vessel with watre vp to pe nek duryng tuo }
\]

\[\text{monepe3, and euer ich day stirre it one3 and stoppe it 40 }
\]
And after that strive it and do away this ground; of these roses. And this is more cold than these toper. Also it is made thus after my manner and myne vse. If thou have 4 not plenty of rose take of white roses with these tendrons of these braunches; as mych as thou wilt, and brisse them in a mortar; these which y-brissed, putte them in als mych common oile as like, and so late them rest 9 daies; afterward 8 boile them vpon softe fire vnto this oile be made grene. Pan if thou may haue fresh rose putte them in ane erpen potte or leden, als many as this likest; and be these forseid oile coled hote sette aboue and moued togider with a spature, 12 And alson stoppe this moue, pat this vapour go not out. And bery this vessel with these oile in moist erpe, and euer oper day be per setted cold watre about this potte. And be it thus done 40 daies or more, & this maner confection 16 schal be most noble oile roset. And thus ow it to stonde al this hole thre.

32. Oile of violettes; may be made in this same maner.
Bot witte thou pat oile of violettes is laxatiue and oile of 20 rose constrictiue. Sfor why; if oile of violettes with even porcion of iuyse of Mercurial 1 be setted in by a clistry in continuell acue; or interpolate, it remolleth softlye this bowela; and putte out this superfluite. Oile of violet haste aspecte 24 to membre; pat bene dried by any infirmite. It abate this bolnyng; wher pat euer pat be; And it softneth this asperite 2 of this brest and of this long, and it cesse pleuresy and hote aposteme. And witte thou pat per is tuo manere; of oile 28 roset, complete and rude. Complete is made of ripe oyle and of ful rose; ripe. Rude is made of vnripe oyle and of rose; pat haste [not?] fully opned pat budde. Oile roset complete is resolutiue, confortatyue, and cons- 32 ueniently cedatiue 3 of akyn. Rude forsothe is extinctiue of inflammacions, confortatyue, aggregatyue, inspissatyue, prohibited of curse; of humours. Oile of roses is special remedy agayns brendynge and hote apostem.35, wher pat 36 euer pat be in this body. Sfor whi; in ane or tuo puttyngs to it mitigate this akyn, it dulles his furiosite and this sharpne; of this mater; It maketh this place for to vnbolne, 4

---

1 "smerwort" overlined. 2 "scharpne" overlined. 3 "cesyng" overlined. 4 "swage" overlined.
and it remeuep pe rede colour. fflor-sope it swagep and softenep pe brennyng & pe prikyng, pe smertyng and pe akyng, And it confortep pe membres bop in hote causes and in cold; fflor after auctours, Oile roset coldep ane hote 4 membre and hetep a cold membre. And it dop many oper profitep in pe body, And per for a gode lech puruey hym pat he want neuer oile rosette, sype per procedep so many helpyng3 of it to manne3 body. fflor why ; after galien, to ever3 S akyng hote oile rosette is mitigateu, as it is seid afore. 33. [O]ile of camamille is pws made: Recip3 camamiu grene and fresch, and brisse it somewhat in a morter. After boile it with a softe fire in 12 comon oile als mych as sufficep. And putte a litel watre in pe oile pat pe herbe in seping be no3t bren; and boile it vnto pe herbe3 go donne to pe grounde and bigynne to be blak. Which y-done, take flours of camamille, if pou 16 may haue pam, and putte pam in ane erpen potte; And zette pe forseid oile coled, als hote as it may, aboue pe floure3, and alsone couer pe moupe of pe potte with parchemyne and sette it in a saue place. fflorsope if pou may 20 [not?] haue flours of camamille in tyme of pi confeccion, pan in-stede of floure3 tak M.i of pe tendre braunche3 of camamille and putte pam with-out any brissyng in a potte, and putte oile ri3t hote vpon pam, as it is seid afore. 24 *And afterward when pou may haue flours of camamille, take pe forseid oile with pe braunche3 of camamille and boile pam eftsone3 vpon pe fire; and as it is seid afore, putte to a litel watre or elle3 a litel vinegre, pat is better, 28 pat pe oile may be more penetratyue, and boile it vnto pe wastynge of pe watre or of pe vinegre; and pat is known by boiling of pe oile made with noyse; pan cole it, and zette it ri3t hote vpon pe floure3 as it was seid. Oile of 32 camamille is temperate, and it is a blissy whole of many helpyngs, and it is a conuenient resolutyue, and of akyng sedatyue, and it is prohibytyue of curse3 of humour3 for a litel stiptikne3 in it. It confortep synowe3 and al synuy 36 membrye3; It helpep to pe akyng of pe heued, And gener-aly it availep to al akyng, and it is conuenient to al complexes, and it is ri3t subtile. And als mych as it dissoluep so mych consumep it.
34. [Oil of Mastick and Oil of Almonds.]

Oil of Mastick.  Its preparation.

Oil of Almonds.  Its preparation.

35. [Oil of Almonds is made |us: |Recipe amigdal.  Dulcis, old & nost new, lb. ½, and tak of |e 24 skynne; with hate watre; afterward brisse pam lang & wele without medlyng of any oper ping; which y-brissed, be pai putte in a new strong bagge of lynne clofe, and hyng pat bag ouer |e caldron or ouer a potte ful of boiling 28 water, so pat |e bagge touch nost |e watre but pat only it receyue |e fume of |e boiling watre.  Afterward presse |e bag strongly and receyfe |e oile pat comep out * and kepe it to pine vse.  Bot witte |ou pat pis oile may nost 32 long endure.  It availep mych agayne brynnynge of vryne within in |e 3rd, If it be cast in wyp a syryng, And agayns oper brennyng3 also.

36. [Almond water.  Its preparation and uses.]

Water of almande is made |us: |Recipe almandes dulces clensed of |air skynne; and dryed, and brisse pam in a morter without medlyng of any oper liquour; And after distille pam as |ou distillep rose watre.  Pis availep agayn3 brennyng of |e
Ointment of Juniper and a good plaister for the Gout.

sonne in ye face, And also agayn; brynyng in a manne; 3erd, put in by a siryng.

37. O

38. A

40

[* leaf 173]

So good that it should only be shown to one's son.
Walwort and a Valence of Scabious.

als were biluffed. I trow, forsoh, 
Pat it availep bifor al 
oper medicyne; to pe goute, and more sone abatep pe akyng. And it ow 5 daiez or 6 to lyc stilke without 
4 remenyng if it may so bene applied.

40. [W]alwort † is ane herbe like vnto el[d]re in lefe3 and 
fruyte. In odour it is su[n]what greuous and stynkyng. 
In tast it is as war bitter, bot in vertu anence old men it 
8 is deemed expert and effectuale, and kynde & free to 
medicyne in many vse3; witnesse plinius, diascorde3, 
macrobi3 and many oper, whos rote3, rynde3, and branche3 
and leuez and flioure3 bene profitaile in medicyne3. It 
12 hape vertu of dissoluyng, consumyng of gret flemme 
and viscose with pe iuys of it. It availep agayn3 pe gutte of 
pe ioynture3 and contraccion of synue3 of pe hende & of 
pe fete. It availep also agayn3 bolnyng3 and collections 
16 intercutanie3 wher-so-euer pai bene gedred in pe body. 
Also it availep most agayn3 brissyngs of membre3 and 
falle3, if pe membrec be fomented in his decoctions. 
for why; it mitigatep pe akyng, it cesepe bolnyng, it minis-
trep vertue and strength to synowe3 and to ioynture3. 
It availep agayn3 bolnyng of pe womb of cold y-dropisy, if 
his Iuys be dronken with hony and comyne. And witte 
pou pat pe Iuys of walwort, or pe poudre of it if it be 
24 hadde redy, is namely in euery medicyne pat is restrictyue 
of blode. pe maner of makyng and kepyng of it is as pe 
maner of licium seid afore.

41. Valence of scabious or of Iacee albe is pus made:

28 Recip[e] Iuys of scabious in somer, and cole it pur3 a clope; 
and tak swyne3 grese clensed of pe skynne3 and stamp it 
wele in a morter in smytynge it bot n3t in brekyng 
vtterly; and euermore putte in a litel of pe iuys to pe 
32 grese pat it may wele be imbibed and pat pe talow may 
be made grene; pe which y-done, tak pat grese and couer 
it with pe forseid iuys and so lat it stand 9 daiez. And 
after 9 daiez take eftsone pe forseid grese with pe iuys 
36 and stamp it as afore, and putte out pat pinne watryne3 
and discolored pat gop out perof, and so lat it stande 5 
daiez. *After pe 5 day eftsone tak new Iuys of scabious 
and stamp it, as it is seid, with pe forseid grese; pe which

ARDERNE.

1 "ebulus" overlined.
Valences of Scabious and Absinthe.

y-done, latte it rest in a vessel with pe iuyse al a fowrt-
y3; which tyme ouerpassed, eftsones bete it as it is seid
afore, and purge it of pe watreine, and putte it in a clene
vessel, and lat it stand stil anofer fouren3. And pe 4
brisse it wele vn to pat it be al of grene colour. And whan
pe nedep for to vse perof, as vn to pe antrax, putte perof
with pi fynger vpon clene stuppe of lyne, and strech it
and lay it on pe antrax anoyned with oile of rose, and 8
remeued it no3 t by a naturel day. ffor without dout it
schal slee pe antrax and swage pe akyn, and brisk it and
vtterly cure it. And pis medyc[ine]e is called Valence of
scabious for pe valow of it. It may be kepte many 3ere, 12
bot it is better if it be euery 3ere renewed and bette newly
with oile roses, and putte vp agayne vn to it nede. And
witte poun pat scabious y-dronken sleep pe antrax, and
puttep away pe venym of it ffo pe hert pat it sle no3 t pe 16
pacient. Also pe same herbe ydronken turep inwaa
aposteme3 to outward and puttep pam out insensibily.
Also witte poun pat new scabious & fresch y-brissed with
swynes grese and putte vpon antrax sleep it in a day 20
naturel, and takep away pe akyn for certayne. Bot for
pat scabious may no3 t euermore be had redy & fresch, per-
for was pis medicine made pat may long be kept, pat
wonderfully sleep pe antrax and vtterly curep it, as I haue 24
proued myself ane hundrep tyme3. Also witte poun pat
Iacea alba is scabious, bot Iacea nigra is matfelon. And
witte poun pat pat scabious pat growepe among corne3 with
ane heenely flour is better pe 4 pat growepe in mydowe3 28
pat hap no flour. After diascorides trowe poun to pis pat
it hapo no pere to pe forseid ping3 wonderfully to be
done, and pat softly. I haue proued it a hundrep tyme3
for certayne.

A valence of wormwood.

42. Valence of wormode is pis made: Recipie iuyse of
wormode, smalach, plantayn, and with swyne3 grese clensed
wele of pe skynne3 brisse it wele and long togidre in
maner as it is seid afore of pe valence of scabious; pe 36
which y-done, kepe it to pin vse. pis valence of wormode
avallep to brissyngs of legge3 and of schynbone3, and to
wounde3 pat ar made in pe muscle3 of pe arme3 and of pe
legge3 with a strey3 wounde, as of a knyfe or of ane arowe, 40
The Gathering and Preparation of Medicines.

(1) A reasonable governance of lawes of lywyng.
(2) Esculapius helyd meane with fernices & medicines.
(3) Ascheplius taught to geder rotes and herbes, flowrles and frotes.
(4) Ascheplius schewed mesures and quantitie; weghte; and wares.
(5) Ascheplius techeft to make puluere; confectiones & electuarie.
(6) Ypocras & gallen schewe certeyne quantitie; in preseruyng.

PLATE IV.—From Sloane MS. 6, Brit. Mus., leaf 176, back.
or of sich oper. And it availep to al wounde; for to hold 
*an opne, and for certayne it mitigatep wele p akynge. 
When pe nedep for to vse *perof in woundes, zette in first of 
oile of rose3 or of violet 2 droppe3 or *pe, and ancuynt al 4 
pe wounde about of pe same oile3, and pe membre pat is 
hurt. And afterward putte aboue of pe forseid valence 
pon softe stupe3 of lynse, and bynde it competently, and 
at it so abide a naturel day. pis medicyne, forsofp, 8 
reppressep wele bolnyng and akynge and holdep pe wounde 
opne, and gendrep quitour, and drawep out venym of pe 
wounde, and quenchep pe brynnyng of pe membre. pis 
oyntment, forsope, luffed I mych; with pis medicyne cured 12 
I a fischer at london, which was hurt in pe lacert of his 
arne of pe prikkyng of a scharp yren standyng on pe 
gymewe3 at pe frere Carome3; Wherfore he was almost 
dede, what of akynge, bolnyng, and brynnyng, and what 16 
of pe vncouenable cure of a barbour pat putte in pe 
wounde scharpe tente3 of lynse clope, and putte aboue diaquilon. 
His cure, forsope, removed away, I putte to 
about euensang-tyme of pe forseid valence with anoyntyng 20 
of oile of roses, And biffore cokcrow pe pacient was 
delyuered of akynge and pe arme biganne for to swage, a 
and in the mornynge he sleped wele, and pe arme was 
purbed of quitour by the wounde. Bot witte pou pat I 24 
putte no tent in pe forseid wounde, bot al-only with 
*ettyng in of oile and puttyng aboue of pe valence with- 
out any-ping atuix I cured hym finaly; wherfor I gatte 
mych honoure. At nothyngham, forsope, I cured anofer 28 
perfitely with pe forseid medicyne, pat was Smyten in pe 
arne, bot no3t porow, with a knyfe; of whos life men 
despaire for akynge and anguysch of pe pacient. 

and another 
at Notting- 
ham.

43. Puluas for to make a man sleep agayn3 his wille, after 32 
maner of Ribaldes3 and trowans in fruance, pat felaw-
shypep *am by weai3 to pilgrime3 pat pai may robbe *am 
of pair siluer when pai ar aslepe. *Recipe semen iusquiamus, 
3i3annie, i.[e.] darnel, papaueris nigri, i.[e.] chessed, de 36 
radice brionie sicc., ana; brek al-togidre in a brasen 
morter into ful smal poudre, of which poudre giff e hym 
in his potage or in a kake of whete or in drynk, & he 
a "vnbolne" overlined.
An Ointment to prevent pain at Operations.

Recipe for Mandrage, and opii Putte fresch Jjis And

croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croci 3j; croc
rubarb. And giffe hym som oper sternutorie\textsuperscript{3}, and alsone he schal wake. And witte pou pat it is gode for to giffe hym afterward castoreum, for it is triacle of insquiamus\textsuperscript{1} & opii & sich oper, whethre it be giffen in pe moupe or in 4 drynk, or it be put in pe nose; for castore chaufep & most confortep pe synewez colded, and soluep pe paralysye. 

And also giffe hym pat confortep pe brayne, as castore, nucis moschati,\textsuperscript{2} roses, nenufare, mirtelle & sumac.

Contra spasmum et crampe.

Contra spasmum et crampe radix brionie in aqua cocta et postea pistata aut per se, vel in agrippa, vel oleo de semine lini, vel in dialthea, vel oleo de lilio aut camomille, collo 12 emplastrata spasmum curat in quocunque membro corporis fuit. Quia in collo \* est origo omnium morborum. Et spasmus est contractio musculorum ad suas origines. Istud carmen sequens contra spasmum expertissimum est a multis 16 inventis eo utentibus, tam in partibus transmarinis quam in istis. Nam apud mediolanis, i.[e.] Melane, in lumbardia tempore quo dominus Leonellus filius regis Anglie nupsit filiam domini Mediolani. Anglici ibidem spaso vexabanten tur propter potaciones vinorum fortium et calorum patriae et nimium repletiones. Unde quidam miles, et filius domini Reginaldi de Gray de Schirlond juxta Chestrefelde, qui fuit apud mediolanum cum domino leonello 24 et habuit secum carmen sequens, et quemdam armigerum a spasmo vexatur ita quod caput suum retro trahebatur fere usque ad collum suum, ad modum balistae,\textsuperscript{a} qui pro dolore et angustia fere exspiravit. Quo viso, dictus 28 Miles accepit carmen, in pergamento scriptum in bursa positum, in collo patientis apposuit dicentibus circumstantibus orationem dominicam ad dominam Maria[m] et, ut mihi juravit fideliter, infra quatuor horas aut quinque 32 sanitati est restitutus. Et postea multos alios a spasmo ibidem liberavit, unde magna fama de illo carmine in illa civitate exercuit:

* Item in civitate Lincoln: ... Item apud London: ... 36 Item apud villam de Huntingdon:

\textsuperscript{a} "crossbow" in the margin.
A Charm against Spasm and Cramp.

Bryony root boiled in water & afterwards crushed either by itself or in agrippa or in linseed oil or in dialthea or in oil of lily or camomile cures spasm when it is plastered upon the neck in whatever part of the body it may be. Because the source of all diseases is in the neck: And spasm is a contraction of the muscles at their origin. The following charm against spasm has been found most sovran by many who have used it both at home and abroad. For amongst the Mediolani [i.e.] the Milanese, in Lombardy at the time when the Lord Lionel, son of the king of England, married the daughter of the lord of Milan, the English there were troubled with spasm due to their potations of the strong & hot wines of the country & to too many carouses. Whereupon a certain knight, the son of Lord Reginald de Grey de Schirlond near Chesterfield, who was at Milan with the Lord Lionel & had with him the following charm, & saw a certain gentleman so troubled with the spasm that his head was drawn backward nearly to his neck just like a crossbow, & he was almost dead from the pain and starvation. And when the said knight saw this he brought the charm written on parchment & placed it in a purse & put it upon the neck of the patient whilst those who stood by said the Lord's prayer and one to our lady Mary, and, as he swore faithfully to me, within four hours or five he was restored to health. And afterwards he freed many there from spasm, & the great report of that charm spread throughout that state. Again in the
city of Lincoln . . . again in London . . . again in the Town of Huntingdon.

In nomine patris ✠ et filii ✠ et Spiritus sancti ✠ Amen.

✠ Thebal ✠ Enthe ✠ Enthanay ✠ In nomine Patris ✠ et Filii ✠ et Spiritus sancti ✠ Amen. ✠ Ihesu Nazarenus ✠ Maria ✠ Johannes ✠ Michael ✠ Gabriel ✠ Raphael ✠ Verbum caro factum est ✠.

Let it be closed afterwards in the manner of a letter so that it cannot be opened easily, & for this reason I used to write it in Greek letters that it might not be understood of the people. And if any one carries that charm written fairly in the name of God almighty, & believes, without doubt he will not be troubled with cramp. Let it be held in respect on account of the Lord who gave virtue to words, to stones & to herbs, & let it be made secretly that every one should not know the charm lest perchance it should lose the virtues given by God.
Grant to R. de Rupella of land in the Cantred of Tirmany, Connaught, given to him by the Black Prince.

Sciant presentes et futuri quod ego Iohannes de Arderne dedi concessi et hac presenti carta confirmaui Domino Richardo de Rupella pro homagio et servicio suo totam terram meam cum omnibus pertinentijs suis sine aliquo retenemento quam habui in illo Theodo quod vocatur Crohun in Cantredo de Tirmany in Connatia de dono et feoffamento domini Edwardi illustris Regis Angliæ primogeniti in escambium manerij sui de Willinghale et Plesingho cum pertinentijs suis habendam et tenendam de me et heredibus meis eidem domino Richardo et heredibus suis et eorum assignatis adeo libere et quiete sicut idem dominus Richardus tenet terram suam de Clonedach’ quam habet de dono et feoffamento predicti domini Edwardi et sicut plenius et liberius et integrus continetur in Carta quam idem dominus Edwardus de dicta terra mihi confeecit reddendo inde per Annum mihi et heredibus meis ipse dominus Ricardus et heredes sui et eorum Assignati vnum denarium ad Pascha et faciendo pro me et heredibus meis predicto domino Edwardo et heredibus suis servicijs feudis vnius militis pro omnibus servicijs consuetudinibus sectis exactionibus et omnibus demandis secularibus. Et ego Iohannes et heredes mei warrantizabimus acquietabimus et defendemus eidem domino Richardo et heredibus suis et eorum Assignatis totam predictam terram cum omnibus pertinentiis suis sine aliquo retenemento per predictum servicijs sicut predictum est contra omnes homines et feminas inperpetuum. Et vt hec mea donatio firma et stabilis permaneat huic Carto Sigillum meum apposui. Hijs testimbus, Dominis Iohanne de Ripar’, Roberto de Vfforde, Ricardo de Tany, Willelmo de Wokingdon, Rogero de Bello Campo, Richardo de Ispanya, Militibus, Waltero de Essex, Thoma Iocelyn, Iohanne de Rupell’, et Alijs.

[This is entered in the Bodleian Catalogue at Oxford under the heading “Arderne Iohannes, chirurgus.” Cf. Forewords, p. x.]
NOTES.

1/1. Ploge seems to be a variant of the more common form plague and is equivalent to 'Plague,' but it is not given in this form in the New English Dictionary.

1/4. An account of John Arderne is given in the Forewords. He calls himself Johannes Arderne Sirurgicus in 1372 and Magister Joh. de Arderne after 1376. I have adopted the simpler form.

1/4. The first pestilence was the Black Death, which entered England at Weymouth about the middle of August 1348, and ravaged the kingdom in 1349. It was pandemic, and yet, in spite of the tremendous mortality which attended its progress, it does not seem to have attracted much attention from the medical men who lived through it. Arderne only uses it in this passage as a means of determining the time when he began to practise in Nottinghamshire, yet he must have seen it in its full fury. Details of the Black Death will be found in Creighton's "History of Epidemics in England," vol. i, and in Father Gasquet's "The Great Pestilence now commonly known as the Black Death." The second pestilence, called the Great Plague, occurred in 1361, and killed amongst others Henrey, Earl of Derby and Duke of Lancaster (cf. 1/10). The third pestilence in 1369 killed his daughter Blanche, wife of John of Gaunt.

1/8. Sir Adam Everyngham. The Everynghams had long been established at Tuxford. An Adam de Everyngham went bail for several deerstealers, 36 Hen. III (1251), and Thoroton, in the "Antiquities of Nottinghamshire" (ed. 1677, p. 380, col. 2), states that John de Lexington died 41 Hen. III (1256), seized of the manor of Tuxford and hamlet of Warsop, and of the land in Lexington held of Adam de Everyngham. The Records of the Borough of Nottingham (1155-1399, vol. i, p. 389) note on April 27th, 1330, a grant from Richard, son of Richard de Laneleye dwelling in Lampadidnawe in Wales . . . . to William de Mekisburg of Nottingham of a messuage in Gedeling and all the land formerly held of Sir Adam de Everyngham in Gedelin, Carleton and Stoke Bardolf. The Sir Adam de Everyngham treated by John Arderne died 8th Feb., 2 Ric. II (1378-9), and he was probably operated upon not later than 1358. This treatise on the fistula was written in 1376 (see Forewords, p. xi), so that this passage must have been a later addition to the original manuscript. The armorial bearings of the Everyngham family are Argent, a fess azure, a label of three points gules. Thoroton (ed. 1797, vol. 3, p. 207) gives a pedigree of the family of Everyngham.

1/10. Sir Henry, that tyme named Erle of Derby. He was Henry Plantagenet (1299?-1361), son of Henry, Earl of Lancaster, and his Countess Maud. Sir Henry was cousin to Edward III who created him Earl of Derby in 1337, Earl of Lincoln in 1349, and Duke of Lancaster in 1351, being the second person in England to be made a Duke. Sir Henry was one of the original Knights of the Garter, and was looked upon throughout Europe as the very mirror of chivalry, when chivalry was at its height.
Readers of Froissart will recall many of his exploits often in company with that other great Captain, Sir Walter de Manny. Sir Henry sailed for Antwerp with King Edward III in July 1338, and in 1339, after the great sea fight at Sluys, he was left in prison in Flanders as security for the King's debts. It may have been at this time that Arderne was practising at Antwerp, if there is any truth in the tradition (see Forewords, p. xii). In 1345 Sir Henry, then Earl of Derby, was sent to Avignon to Pope Clement VI and Alfonzo XI of Castile. Whilst in Spain he and his fellow ambassador, the Earl of Salisbury, did good service against the Moors at the siege of Algeciras when cannon are said to have been used for the first time. Arderne treated a Spanish nobleman at Algeciras (Forewords, p. xi).

1/13. The irregular endings of the technical terms which is noticeable here and in other parts of the MS. (cf. 24/5) is due to the scribe copying them as they stand in the Latin text where the case varies with the construction of the sentence in which it occurs.

1/14. Arderne's knowledge of the Gascony campaign is curiously minute and makes it possible that he had actually taken part in it or that he knew the country intimately. Writing more than thirty years after the event he gives the towns in the order in which they were visited by one of the three divisions into which the Duke of Lancaster, formerly the Earl of Derby, had divided his forces, rather than in the correct geographical order. The army landed at Bordeaux and captured Bergerac on 24th August, 1345. The town was granted to Lancaster as a reward for his services but reverted to the crown upon his death. It came afterwards into the hands of Edward "the Black Prince," and was given by him to John of Gaunt in 1370. The arms of the town "Deux pattes de griffon sur un champ d'or" may still be seen emblazoned in the Great Crowcher Book of the Duchy of Lancaster, says Mr. Armitage-Smith in his "John of Gaunt" (p. 199).

_Toulouse._ Sir Adam doubtless reached here with the force acting on the Lot and Garonne rivers after the battle of Auberoche on 24th October, 1345, when 800 lances and 600 archers defeated a force estimated at 10,000 strong under the Count of Lille-Jourdain.

_Narbonne_ had some special association for John Arderne, since he named one of his best-beloved ointments Unpt. Noirbon, adding as a pun that though it was black (Noir) it was good (bon).

_Poitiers_ was stormed on 4th October, 1346, with a tremendous slaughter of men, women and children. So much rich booty was taken that raiment was held of no account unless it was cloth of gold or silver, or plumes. The campaign ended here, and the Duke of Lancaster returned to London 13th June, 1347.

1/23. _Mene_ is here used in the sense of "an instrument or agency," and is equivalent to "deo favente." It is as favourite a phrase with Arderne as "I dressed him, God cured him," used to be with Ambrose Paré.

1/29. _Balne_ by _Snaith_. Balne is 54 miles from Snaith, a small town in the West Riding of Yorkshire. There was a priory at Snaith belonging to the Warwick family.

2/1. _John Schefeld of Britwell a-side Tekyl_. This John was probably a member of the knightly family of Sheffield of Nottingham. The manor of Tickhill was granted to John of Gaunt in 1372 with other rewards for surrendering the Earldom and Honour of Richmond, which was im.
immediately bestowed upon John de Montford to secure his allegiance then wavering between England and France.

2/2. Sir Reginald Grey de Witton, also known as Grey de Shirlond or De Grey. He was the fourth Lord de Grey and was aged 30 in 1342. He died in 1370, and held the manor of Shirlond, co. Derby. His grandfather John, Lord de Grey, was Justice of North Wales and Vice-Justice of Chester 1296-97. Sir Reginald Grey's son, the fifth Lord de Grey, served in Gascony in 1366. The peerage became extinct in 1614 when the fifteenth Lord de Grey died in the Tower after having been found guilty of high treason in connection with the Bye or Priest's Plot. The Calendar of Close Rolls (Ed. III, 1354-1360, No. 1358) gives the names of Sir Reynold de Grey and John Arderne as witnesses to an enrolment of release by Roger de Puttenham, knight of the manor of Wylie, co. Warwick.

2/5. Sir Henry Blakborne. A Sir Henry de Blakeburn, son of William, son of Paulinus de Eleston of the County of Lancaster, obtained "a general pardon for his good service in the war of France... on condition that he did not withdraw from the King's service so long as he shall stay this time on this side the sea without his special licence." The pardon is granted by K and the testimony of Adam de Swynburn, under-constable of the Army. It is dated "By Calais, September 4th, 1346." There also exists a ratification of the estate of a Henry de Blakeburn as prebendary of Preston, in the church of St. Mary, Salisbury. It bears the date September 22nd, 1351. On May 7th, 1379, "Henry de Blakeburn was presented to the church of Redcleve-on-Soar by John de Wynewyk, and has since resigned it." ("Cal. of Patent Rolls," Ed. III, viii, 496; ix, 137; and Rich. II (1377-1381), p. 363.)

2/10. The transcriber has left out a line here. The text runs, "Afterward I halid Sir John Masty parsone of Stopporte in Chestre-shire."

2/11. Gunnas or Gunnays was a York family in the fourteenth century. Thomas Gunnays was a scrivener in 1363-4; John Gunnays a Tannator in 1389-90, and there was also John, a Marchaunt. ("Register of York Freemen," The Surtees Soc., vol. i, 1896.)

2/13. The scribe has made a mistake in the name. John le Colier was Mayor of Northampton in 1326-7, and again in 1339-40. He seems to have been a most regular attendant at the meetings of the Town Council, because his name appears as a witness to thirty-three documents between the years 1315 and 1340. ("Records of the Borough of Nottingham," vol. i, 1155-1399.) A William Colyar was Mayor of Northampton 1368-9.

2/29. Towel. Arderne's translator uses somewhat unusual terms for the parts with which he is dealing. The towel is always the Anus. It is, I suppose, a form of "tewel," a pipe or funnell, and the word has survived in the North of England as a "tyuer" in connection with the blast furnaces. Longanun or Longaon is the ordinary mediaeval word for the rectum or lowest segment of the large intestine. The Lure is sometimes the ischio-rectal fossa, and sometimes the anus or rectum. The "Promptorium Parvulorum" gives "Month of a botel," "Lura," or Leather bagge, adds the Bibliotheca Eliotae, ed. 1550. The New English Dictionary, s.v. Lure, 2 Her(aldic), says, "A conventional representation of a hawk's 'lure,' consisting of two birds' wings with the points directed downwards and joined above by a ring attached to a cord." Either of these similes suits the anatomy of the ischio-rectal fossa, but it is clearly the simpler one that was in Arderne's mind, as he did not know enough anatomy to visualise the ischio-rectal fossa in accordance with the hawk's lure. Cf. 11/10.
Notes. Page 2, line 40 to page 4, line 2.

2/40. The opinions of Arderne's immediate contemporaries and predecessors on the subject of Fistula in ano are given in the Forewords (p. xvi).

3/8. The translation quite misses the beauty of this passage, which should read, "It is not opened to them that knock as they pass by, but to those who stand and knock."

3/13. In diuanudiis. These words have proved a crux from the earliest times. Some scribes have merely copied the words here printed, others have omitted them entirely. John Arderne clearly wrote a very bad hand, but Miss E. M. Thompson has made the following transcription of Sloane MS. No. 29301 (leaf 22, back, col. 80), which was presumably a fair copy produced under Arderne's immediate supervision—"Nota de honore dei. Ad honorem ergo dei omnipotens qui aperuit mihi sensum ut thesaurum in agro studenter absconditum quod longo tempore pectore-que anelo diligencius ac pertinacius diu avidius insuadaverim invenire prout mea suppetat facultas absque scruatus facunditate posteris, domino mediante istoque libello, explicite duxi exarandus. Non ut meipsum laude dignum ex tanto munere ceteris efferam sed, ut ne dominum irretem et pro draguna quam mihi tradidit affatu urgeo delatoris." The badly written words "diu avidius" in this passage were soon corrupted into "in diuanudiis," the "in" being an interpolation. "In diuanudiis" easily became "De Dimamidiis," the name of a spurious work ascribed to Galen, and thus Arderne acquired an undeserved reputation as a Grecian.

3/23. The transcriber has omitted the line, "bat is leulf forsof to say that is known & for to witness that is seene."

3/27. This was the Black Prince's campaign in 1355. It lasted eight weeks, and was of a freebooting character.

3/34. Yet John Arderne thought it wise to obtain the Minorite's secret. "Il ne revele son secret (en 1370) que parce qu'il est vieux et qu'il a tire des tres-beaux benefices," says Darenberg (Hist. des. Sci. med. i, 301, note).

3/36. It is unnecessary to show the debt of the medical profession in the middle ages to Galen, who was born at Pergamos about A.D. 131. Arderne probably quotes Galen through a Latin translation of an Arabic version. He knows him as the author of the Megatechni or De methodo medendi—βερακεντικος μεθοδος—and of the Microtechni, or simply the Techni or Tegni which was the arts medica or τεχνη ιατρικη. The Pantechni or Pantegni used here by Arderne was not one of Galen's writings. It was written in Arabic by Isaac the Jew (d. 932 A.D.), and was translated into Latin by Constantinus Africanus (fl. 1036 A.D.), who issued it as his own. Cf. 55/3. Prof. Ed. Nicaise ("La Grande Chirurgie de Guy de Chauliac," Paris, 1890, p. 52) says that in 1309 the Faculty of Medicine at Montpellier demanded that each bachelor who wished to become a Master must have studied the following books of Galen, "De complexionibus; de malicia complexionis diverse; De simplici medicina; De crisi et criticis diebus; De Ingenio sanitatis." He had also to explain two books which had been lectured upon and one which had not been commented upon, of the Techni and Prognostics, or of the Aphorisms of Hippocrates, or of his Regimen, or the Isagogae of Johannitius, the Febres of Isaac, or the Antidotary of Rhazes. See Dr. Payne on Medical Books in use at Montpellier, Rashdall's "Universities of Europe," Vol. 2, part ii, page 780. The fact that Arderne knew and quotes all these writers lends some support to the theory that he was educated at Montpellier.

4/2. These passages on the Manner or Behaviour of a Leech form the true joy of those who travail amongst the old Masters of Medicine and
surgery. They are full of conceits, and give a picture of contemporary manners and customs which it is impossible to obtain in any other way. The parallel passages from Salicet, Mondeville and Lanfrank are given in the Forewords (xix-xxvii), and show that there was a common source for these paragraphs on medical ethics of which the chief was “De adventu medici” of Archimatteus, a master at Salerno.

4/24. The expression “for why” is employed by the translator as the English equivalent for the Latin word “Nam.” It does not imply a question therefore, but is used as we should now say “because.”

5/8. The greeting of ladies by thrusting the hands into their bosom had a long vogue in England, and it would be interesting to know whether the fashion of wearing low-necked dresses was a cause or an effect of the custom. By the end of the seventeenth century it was only used by near relatives, and Mr. Samuel Pepys records that he availed himself of the privilege.

6/4. Speaking of the cure of scabies by the inunction of a mercurial ointment (MS. Ashmol. 1434, leaf 131; cf. 79/1), Arderne says, “I have tried it many times and have made a good deal of money from it, and I got twenty shillings for a single application. And take notice that the inunction must be repeated for forty days, or for a month at least. (“Quod centes probavi et exinde multa lucra adquisivi pro certo et haec xxs. pro uno lisero. Et nota quod tale lisorium per xl dies vel mensem ad minus debet portari.”)

6/4. The fees charged by Arderne are very large, if it be remembered that money had at least seventeen times and perhaps twenty times its present value. I have given some account of the fees of our ancestors in Janus (May–June 1909, pp. 287–293), and to the facts there contained I may add an observation obtained by Prof. Ed. Nicaise for his edition of Guy de Chauliac’s Surgery (op. cit. p. lxii). “A lady was attended in 1348 by three doctors, two Jews and a Christian, and she paid a fee of half a florin to each. The livre tournois at this time was equivalent to one florin and 16 sols of pontifical money—the cash then current at Avignon—and corresponded to 27 francs 34 centimes of modern French money. The general practitioner therefore received 8 francs 17 centimes for each visit, which is equivalent to three visits for a guinea.”

6/5. The custom of paying for an operation by an annuity as well as by a fee lingered in England until late in the seventeenth century, for Richard Wiseman (1622?–1676), speaking of a patient, says, “This person retired into the country afterwards and returned to London at the end of two years, and acknowledged to me his cure by settling thirty pounds a year upon me during his life and paid me sixty pounds for the two years passed.” The livres of French history, too, will recollect that Louis XIV paid Dr. François Felix the sum of one hundred and fifty pounds and settled a farm upon him in 1686 for curing him of a fistula.

7/29. “The Senator Boetius,” says Gibbon, “is the last of the Romans whom Cato or Tully could have acknowledged for their countryman.” (“Roman Empire,” ed. 1862, v, 27.) He was born at Rome about 475 A.D. and was consul in 510. He was a minister of Theodoric, King of the Ostrogoths, who displaced the Emperor Odoacer. Boethius was afterwards imprisoned at Pavia and was put to death in 525 A.D. He was subsequently canonised as St. Severinus. He wrote the “De consolatione Philosophiae” (Chaucer’s translation of which was published in the Early English Text Soc.’s Extra Series, No. V, 1868), as well as some valuable treatises on
Music and Geometry. The "de disciplina scholarium" mentioned in the text is falsely ascribed to Boetius. It is quoted again 23/27.

7/39. Arderne repeatedly draws attention to the effect of the mind on the body, and makes it appear that what we now call neurasthenia was not unknown in his experience. Cf. 6/23, 8/3, 60/16, 64/32.

8/27. The operation of fistula recommended by Arderne is described in the Forewords (p. xvii) to this volume. Arderne purposely gives fancy names to the instruments and to the remedies he uses as part of a fixed design to keep his methods secret. This secrecy was a common feature of the medical profession until quite recently—indeed it still lingers in parts where medical men dispense "our ointment" or "our linctus." Arderne especially feared the competition of other leeches, cf. 15/9 and 30/3, of the Barbers, cf. 71/16, and of the laity, cf. 103/3, for when he used the charm against tic, tetanus and delirium tremens, he not only disguised the words in Greek characters but he made nonsense of them, "ne a laicus perspicietur."

8/29. The sequere me was a flexible probe, and was named appropriately enough because it was the guide to be followed.

9/4. The acus rostrata, or "snowted needle," was a grooved director along which the scalpel was passed. The snowted or curved end fitted into a hole in the cochlearia or shield which was introduced later in the operation to protect the opposite side of the rectum at the moment the fistula was divided. This snouted needle was made of silver.

9/12. The tendiculum, or dilator, made of boxwood, was used chiefly to keep the ligature taut whilst the fistula was being divided. For this purpose it was provided with a hole into which fitted (9/16) the wrayste or "vertile," much in the same way that the peg fits into a violin. The ends of the ligature were passed round the wrayste, which was then twisted until the frænum cesarius was tight enough.

9/20. The frænum Caesaris, or ligature, constricted the rectal side of the fistula. It seems to be merely a vestigium of an obsolete operation for the cure of fistula. Albucasis used it as an écrauseur, and Arderne had sufficient reverence for authority not to discard it. But the operation he describes is one of simple division. The tendiculum, the wrayste and the frænum Caesaris, therefore, are useless because as soon as the division was complete, they all fell out of the wound. Cf. 24/26. They steadied the parts whilst the incision was made, but they complicated the operation by giving the surgeon two instruments to hold in his left hand (the acus rostrata and the tendiculum) whilst he held the scalpel in his right hand. The cochlearia must always have been held by the assistant—the fellow of the leech—as Arderne calls him,—the surgeon's mate—as the Elizabethans knew him.

9/24. The siringa is probably only a clyster-pipe. Two forms are given, the one with side-openings, as was then used, the other an improved form recommended by Arderne as the result of his own experience (cf. 74/38) in which there is only a single terminal orifice.

11/1. Aposteme is an early form of the word which afterwards became Imposthume. It means a suppurating inflammation or an abscess.

11/6. Arderne's pathology of fistula is excellent and is clearly the result of observation. He has seen and treated cases of ischio-rectal abscess, and has observed how such abscesses have become chronic and ended in a fistula.
11/18. The axillary glands were the emunctories of the heart: the inguinal glands of the liver: the cervical glands of the brain.

11/19. Chawellez is quite an unusual word, and except for the Latin version it would be incomprehensible. The Latin gives the English gloss “fauces.” It seems, therefore, to be a form derived from the same source as “Chawylbone” which the Promptorium Parvulorum renders Mandibula.

11/20. Gilbertyn is Gilbert the Englishman, known to all readers of Chaucer because he is named in the Prologue (I. 429) with Bernard and Gatesden. Gilbertus Anglicus flourished about 1210, and is said to be the first practical English writer on medicine though Master Richard preceded him. Dr. Payne in his Fitzpatrick lectures in 1904 says that Theodoric took his description of leprosy from Gilbertyn, a description evidently at first hand and in many respects very accurate. Gilbert wrote a compendium or Laurea of medicine, printed at Lyons 1510 (cf. 55/10), and a Commentary upon the verses of Gilles de Corbeil “De Urinis” (cf. 59/32). A commentary in English upon these same verses and attributed to John Arderne exists in manuscript in the Hunterian Library at Glasgow (No. 328).

11/21. Ol. roset. Oil of roses entered largely into the mediæval pharmacopœia as a soothing application. The ceruse here ordered to be mingled with it is carbonate of lead, and the litharge is protoxide of lead. The lotion thus had the soothing and astringent properties which is still attributed to lead lotion or Goulard extract.

11/24. Wombe. Arderne speaks consistently of the belly as the womb both in men and women; when he speaks specifically of the womb in women he employs the term Marice. Cf. pp. 80/39, 85/4 and 86/26.

11/27. Arderne, like his contemporaries, recognises two forms of Mallow. The Althœa rosea—which he calls “tame” mallow (cf. 12/15), because it was grown in the garden, and Malva silvestris—the wild mallow.

11/32. A Nastar of tree. Arderne fortunately gives the English equivalent for Nastar in the manuscript No. 112 (T. 5, 14), fol. 77, contained in the Hunterian Library, Glasgow, and says, “Nastare species est clysteris sive enematis e a glister pipe.” A Nastar of tree, therefore, is a wooden enema nozzle. The wood may be either boxwood, hazel or willow. His description of the bladder and its method of preparation is given later on; cf. 75/1 et seqq.

12/1. After auctores. The author is probably Serapion the younger who wrote a large work on pharmacology, which was translated from Arabic into Latin under the title “Liber de medicamentis simplicibus” or “De temperamentis simplicium.” He lived about the end of the eleventh century. For Serapion the elder see 55/29, p. 124.

12/9. Diaquikon. Three forms of diachylon plaster were used. One called Rhazes’ plaster; a second Mesue’s, and the third diachylon commune. Arderne here recommends Mesue’s diachylon which contained mucilage of Althœæ and oil of camomile amongst many other ingredients.

12/15. M. The symbol M. is used for Manipulus in dispensing drugs—a handful—and the handful was either large or small. The small handful or pinch was denoted by the letter P. for Pugillus, and it was usually estimated at about the eighth part of the Manipulus.

12/21. Lana succida is sufficiently described in the text. It seems to have been a crude method of obtaining what is now called lanolin. An undressed fleece is still used in folk-medicine.

ARDERNE.
12/21. The persistence of these simple remedies is shown by Miss Edith Durham's interesting account of Higher Albania (Lond. 1909, p. 93). She says, speaking of a comminuted fracture of the leg treated by an old Franciscan at Vukli:"He then plugged and dressed the wound with a salve of his own making—the ingredients are extract of pine resin, the green bark of elder twigs, white beeswax and olive oil. The pine resin would provide a strong antiseptic. The property of the elder bark I do not know. . . . In gunshot wounds he was very expert. For 'first aid' his prescription was: Take the white of an egg and a lot of salt, pour on to the wound as soon as possible and bandage. This only temporary till the patient could be properly treated with rakia (the local alcoholic drink) and pine salve as above. The wound was to be plugged with sheep's wool, cleaned and soaked in the salve. The dressing to be changed at night and morning and at midday also if the weather be very hot. Should the wound show signs of becoming foul, wash again with rakia as often as necessary. This treatment he had inherited from his grandfather who had it from his. The exact proportions and way of making salve he begged to be excused from telling me as they were a family secret." Every word of this passage would have been approved by Arderne. He would have recognised his Unguentum sambuci (cf. 30/21), the egg medled (cf. 28/4) with salt would have been nothing new to him, the cleaning of the sheep's wool he might have considered an improvement upon his own lana succida (cf. 12/20), as he had an open mind (cf. 35/4), and he would have endorsed thoroughly the old priest's disinclination to give away the secret of a preparation (cf. 15/8).

12/40. Wormed, i. e., warmed.

13/20. Ragadie or Ragadiez was the name given to fissures formed round the anus and vulva. It is used here to denote chronic ulceration. Frousinge is a mere repetition of ragadie, as it does not occur in the Latin texts.

13/24. An ulcer undesiccable is an ulcer which continues to form pus in spite of treatment. Mediaeval surgeons were very skilful in frightening themselves with names.

14/4. There were two Geoffrey Scropes living in the latter half of the fourteenth century. (i) Sir Geoffrey Scrope, knighted before Paris, 1360. He was the eldest son of Sir Henry le Scrope of Masham, Co. York, the first Lord Scrope, who was Governor of Guisnes and Calais in 1360. This Geoffrey Scrope was slain at Piskre, Lithuania, in 1362 (cf. 67/34). (ii) Sir Geoffrey le Scrope, son of Stephen, second Lord Scrope, who was living in 1409, but had died sine prole before 1418. The brother of this Geoffrey le Scrope was Stephen le Scrope, Archdeacon of Richmond in Yorkshire, who died September 5, 1418.

14/20. It is clear from this and the following lines that Arderne had seen and noted cases of uraemia following upon long-continued urethral fistulae. The headache, giddiness, dull pain in the loins and vomiting which occur during the later stages of renal disease are all duly noted.

14/38. Bernard de Gordon was teaching at Montpellier in 1285, and was living in 1318. He wrote the "Lilium medicinae," but Arderne here shows that he was absolutely ignorant of Anatomy.

15/8. This is another good instance of the secrecy which characterised the practice of surgery at this period. It was still a trade to be taught, and it was many years before it became a profession to be learned. (Cf. 8/25 and 71/15.)
Notes. Page 16, line 4 to page 24, line 21. 115

16/4. It would have been impossible for Arderne to have escaped the belief in Astrology which was a feature of his time. He gives the usual table, common to all his contemporaries, for finding the house of the moon on any given day, and he thought that the planets had an influence upon the twelve parts of the body which correspond to the signs of the zodiac.

16/7. Ptolomeus was Ptolemy the physician, who lived at Alexandria in the third century B.C., and was perhaps identical with Ptolemy the Geographer. De Mondeville quotes Ptolemy the physician and refers to his “Centilegium”; Guy de Chauliac also speaks of his “Centiloquium.” Pictagoras was Pythagoras the Greek philosopher, born about 582 B.C. He was steeped in the mystical lore of Egypt and India; a vegetarian and a social reformer, his name is chiefly associated with the doctrine of Metempsychosis.

Rasis is Abú Beer Mohammed Ibn Zacariyá Ar-Rázi, commonly known as Rhazes. He was born in 850 A.D. and died about 932. He was the first great Arabian physician, and his text-book called the “Continent” was only displaced by the work of Haly Abbas. Rhazes is still interesting to us because he first distinguished clearly between Smallpox and Measles.

16/8. Haly is Haly the Arabian physician who died in 994 A.D. He wrote the “Royal Book” which displaced Rhazes’ text-book, and was in turn displaced by the Canon of Avicenna. Cf. 56/7, p. 124.

21/2. Arderne’s account of fistulate or festred gout makes its probable that he is describing the condition which is now known as chronic inflammation of the bone due to infective micro-organisms. Sophocles described Philocetes as suffering from a similar condition. Cf. 46/25.

21/9. Ypocras, i.e. Hippocrates, lived during the golden age in Greece (460-377 B.C.), and was contemporary with Socrates. His writings were known through Galen’s commentaries upon the Prognostics, Aphorisms, and on Regimen in Acute Diseases, which had been translated into Latin before the fourteenth century.

21/27. The meaning of this passage may be thus rendered, “Take heed lest thou art so blinded by the desire for money as to operate upon a case thou knowest to be incurable.”

22/12. Lusting is here equivalent to grudging.

22/17. The details of the operation are admirably given, and it is quite possible to follow each step, a very rare thing in the case of mediæval writers on surgery, but Arderne was a master of this part of his subject. Cf. Forewords, p. xvii.

22/22. The rig bone is the vertebral column. Cf. 34/34, 62/8, 70/24.

23/1. Arderne shows his ability by recommending a cutting operation. It proves that he was not afraid of the bleeding which daunted his contemporaries and many of his successors. Cf. 24/32.

23/21. Both John Arderne and Henri de Mondeville were never tired of repeating that surgery was an art to be learnt by practice. It was too much the custom of the time to rely upon authority and to think that everything could be learnt from books.


24/21. Arderne gives a choice of two cutting instruments, a razor and a lancet. Dr. Stewart Milne (“Surgical Instruments in Greek and Roman Times,” Oxford, 1907, p. 31) describes a form of razor in which “a scalpel
blade is mounted on a ring and the fore-finger is passed through the ring.” Such a razor would have suited Arderne’s purpose admirably, but he used some form of scalpel. “Lanceola,” says Dr. Freind (“The History of Physic,” part 2, p. 177), “in its proper genuine signification is no older than Julius Capitolinus, how long it has been applied to signify a surgical instrument I cannot tell; however, it may be traced as high at least as the time of William of Bretagne, who lived in 1220 and wrote the history of Philip August, whose chaplain he was.” He gives some account of the lanceola, and distinguishes it very plainly from the Phlebotomus, both which instruments we see were made use of in that age. “Lanceola dicitur subtile ferrum acutum, cum quo minutores aliqui pungendo venam aperiunt in minutione. Aliquorum Phlebotomos venam percutiunt.” (Lanceola is a name given to a delicate pointed instrument with which some bleeders open a vein by puncturing it in bleeding. Others breathe a vein with a phlebotome.) (Cf. 61/23.)

24/29. Arderne here shows that he knows the last thing a surgeon learns—the knowledge when to stop in operating.

24/32. Surgeons had no satisfactory instruments for stopping bleeding until pressure forceps were invented by Sir Spencer Wells about 1884. Many devices were tried and had their day, but haemorrhage remained the bugbear of every operating surgeon, and the fear of its occurrence limited the scope of his work. Arderne here recommends the excellent, simple and cleanly method of sponge pressure to arrest the immediate haemorrhage, and afterwards uses a styptic powder. Arderne gained a great reputation for his prescriptions (cf. Forewords p. xxxi), and it is evident that he was a good physician as well as a practical surgeon; cf. pp. 97 and 98. The styptics here recommended were all in common use. Boli is Bolus armeniacus, a yellow earth containing oxide of iron. Sanguis draconis was the resin obtained from the fruit of the Calamus draco. Aloes epaticus: the mediaeval materia medica recognised socotrin aloes and hepatic aloes which was an inferior quality.

25/9. Walwort is either the Sambucus or the Pellitory. Arderne probably means the Elder, of which it was said “this tree has not one part but is used in Pharmacy.” The juice is still used in the form of Elder wine.

26/11. Directions for making sanguis veneris and oil of camomile are given on pp. 89 and 94.


26/21. The preparation of Pulv. sine pari is given on p. 86.

27/6. The preparation of Salus populi is given on p. 90. It is characteristic of the time that fancy names are purposely given to all these preparations lest their composition should become known to the barbers or to other leeches.

27/25. Bolnyaing is equivalent to swelling or swollen.

27/28. Alum zucarin. combust. is described on p. 81. Three kinds of alum were recognised: alum glass, alum plume, and alum zucarin. Alum glass was the crude alum crystals; alum plume was the natural aluminium sulphate; alum zucarin. was the re-crystallised form; but alum zucarin. was also used as a synonym for sugar candy. The crude alum was sometimes called Alumen roche from the town of Roche in Syria, and as this was often written Alumen Rō it came to be called Alum of Rome.
27/30. Sarcocolla is the resin of the Penea sarcocolla and mucronata. It was thought to make the flesh adhere together, hence its name.

27/31. Psidie is pomegranate bark.

27/32. Terra sigillata, or Lemnos earth, was imported from Egypt in large pastiles stamped with the Sultan's seal, hence its name. It had astringent properties.

27/38. Ceruse is carbonate of lead. Lithargyrum or Litharge is the protoxide of lead which forms as a pellicle on the surface of melted lead; lithargyrate of silver and gold are formed similarly when these metals are melted.

28/10. Arderne clearly indicates the calling of an apothecary as distinct from the barbers, surgeons and physicians of the time. As a surgeon he gathered his own simples and made his own preparations, rather to keep their composition a secret than because he was obliged to do so, for the apothecaries would have made them up for him equally well.

30/21. "Smalah," says Dr. R. C. A. Prior ("On the Popular Names of British Plants," Lond. 1879, p. 217), "or Smallage, is a former name of the celery, meaning the small ache or parsley compared with the great parsley, olus atrum. Ach, Fr. ache, is derived from the Latin apium by the change of pi to ch, as in sepia to sache."

Wormode is wormwood, the Artemisia absinthium. The word is corrupted from A.S. and O.E. vermod. Wormwood was used in the Middle Ages to keep off mod or made, a maggot; the first syllable, derived from A.S. verian, to keep off, has become by similarity of sound worm.

30/22. Molayne is the Verbascum Thapsus, or Tapsivarbarbatus ebulus, the big (hag) taper, or Bullock's lungwort.

Walwort is the dwarf elder, the Sambucus ebulus, sometimes called Danesblood or Danewort.

Sparge or Spurge is the Cataputia minor; Weybread is the plantain—Plantago major; Mugwort is the Artemisia vulgaris. It is said to have obtained its popular name from its use against moughte, mough or moghe, a moth or maggot. Auance is Avens or Herb Benett, i.e. Benedicta, the Geum urbanum. "Where the root is in the house the devil can do nothing and flies from it; wherefore it is blessed above all herbs," says Platearius, whose book Arderne had read. Cf. 79/10.

30/23. Petite Consoude was the consolda minima or the daisy—Bellis perennis. The name Consoude was given to several different plants in the Middle Ages, e.g. the Comfrey, the Bugle and the Wild Larkspur. "And for healing of wounds, so soveraigne it is, that if it bee put into the pot and sodden with pieces of flesh, it will souder and rejoine them, whereupon the Greekes imposed upon it the name of Symphytum-Consound," says Pliny in Philemon Holland's translation (Bk. 27, ch. vi, p. 275).

Wodbynd is the Woodbine or Lonicera Periclymenum.

31/21. Diaflosmus is the plaster used as a local application, whilst tapismel is the confection for internal use. Tapismel here mentioned, and for the first time, had an extraordinary popularity and was official as late as 1773. Cf. Forewords, p. xxx.

32/7. The deadly nightshade is called in German Nachtschatten, and it is possible that Arderne may have learnt the Flemish word for it, if he was at Antwerp, as is reported traditionally. Cf. Forewords, p. xii.
33/13. Arderne gives a formula for his unguentum ruptorium (Sloane MS. 29501, leaf 35, col. 1), which is substantially the same as the one mentioned here. It consists of unslaked lime well mingled with black soap and made into a mass, which was afterwards bound with diacathyron upon the part to be destroyed. Jamerius (cf. 55/3, Rubrica xxi) also gives a formula for a ruptory, "De unguento quod ruptorium dicitur. Unguentum forte quod ruptorium dicitur. R. Saponis saraceni pondus x denariorum; calcis vive pondus viii, capitelli fortissimi pondus v denariorum. Confici sic: calx prius cribellata cum sapone diu conflagiatur, deinde addatur capitellum, et cum predictis commisceatur." There were two kinds of lime ointment. The older form was made by "taking of lime that hath been washed at least seven times lb.ss. Wax iii; Oil of Roses lb.i. Let them all be briskly worked together in a leaden mortar, after the wax hath been by a slow fire melted in a sufficient quantity of the same oil." (Alleyne, op. cit., p. 330, col. i, No. 11.) The other ointment was the more active. B. Quicklime vij; Auripigment giss; roots of Florentine Orris ; yellow Sulphur; Nitre ana giss.; a strong lixivium of Bean Stalks lb. ii.; Mix and boil all, in a new pot glazed, to a just thickness, which you may know by anointing a feathered quill there-with, if the feathers easily fall off; then add Oyl of Spike gss.; and make an ointment or liniment." (Salmon's "New London Dispensary," 1678, p. 768, col. 2.) Soap was of two kinds: White soft soap known as French soap, and hard grey soap called Saracenie soap. The latter is meant when the prescription demands black soap.

34/4. Arderne anchored his tents in much the same way as we now anchor drainage tubes in deep wounds by putting a thread through one end. He uses the word "ground" systematically for "bottom," so that where we should say the bottom of the wound he says (34/6) "in the grounde of the fistula."

35/15. Reparaled means the same as re-dressing a wound, that is to say, changing the dressings.

36/15. Arderne loved to play upon words. Cf. 37/12 and 91/32. He could not resist the pun with "bubo," which is the technical term for an abscess in the axilla or groin, and also means an owl. Guy makes the same joke (ed. Nicaise, p. 166). Buboes were the characteristic mark of the bubonic plague, and he must have seen many examples. In the later epidemics the Searchers recognised the disease by the botch which is a plague token.

37/6 et seq. Arderne gives a most creditable account of cancer of the rectum, and distinguishes it clearly from dysentery.

37/29. Those who know how many cases of cancer of the rectum are still overlooked and are treated as cases of chronic constipation, will trow with Arderne that there are still many "wele unkunyng leeches" abroad.

38/11 et seqg. The treatment and the picture of the later stages of cancer of the rectum are excellent, and are evidently drawn from repeated personal experience.

38/40. Arderne very properly insists on a digital examination in cases of chronic ulceration of the rectum. Such an examination is still too often omitted. Both time and knowledge are then lost, to the great detriment of the patient.

39/8. Blo is throughout the scribe's method of spelling blue; "bloness" (cf. 52/27), therefore, is the same as bluish.
39/27. Arderne again warns against the dishonest habit of operating merely for the sake of the fee when no commensurate advantage is gained by the patient.

39/40. Aysel is an early form for eissel—v vinegar.

40/1. Virga pastoris was used by the old writers on materia medica for several varieties of Dipsacus, and more especially for D. pilosus, silvestris and fullonum. It is the Teasels.

40/21. There were several varieties of white ointment. The form attributed to Rhazes contains oil of roses $\frac{3}{6}x$; Ceruse carefully washed in rose-water and powdered $\frac{3}{11}$; white wax $\frac{5}{11}$. Avicenna's ointment contained litharge as an ingredient, with the white of eggs beaten into it.

40/27. Attrament is here a synonym for Vitriol (cf. 79/1). "Of atramente$\bar{\bar{\bar{\bar{\bar{\bar{j}}}}}}$, i.e. of vitriole$\bar{\bar{\bar{\bar{\bar{\bar{j}}}}}}$." It also means Ink (cf. 67/23).

40/33. Celidone is the Chelidonium majus, the juice of which was greatly esteemed as a collyrium, "because," says Gerarde (p. 911), "some hold opinion that with this herb the dams restore sight to their young ones, when their eyes be put out." Dr. Prior (op. cit. p. 40) says that this notion, quoted by Gerarde from Dodonaeus and copied by him from Pliny, who had it from Aristotle, was received and repeated by every botanical writer, and is embodied in the Regimen Sanitatis Salerni—

"Cecatis pullis ac lumine mater hirundo
Plinius ut scribit, quamvis sunt eruta reddit."

which was Englished—

"Young Swallows that are blind, and lacke their sight,
The Damme (by Celendine) doth give them light,
Therefore (by Plini) wee may boldly say,
Celendine for the sight is good alway."

41/1. Few savage is erysipelas. Cf. 91/9, p. 133.

41/8. The second pestilence was the epidemic of 1361. Cf. 1/4.

41/33. The bloody fik is explained in the treatise on haemorrhoids to be a bleeding pile. Cf. 50/21.

42/38. I cannot identify the powder creosferoboron or (43/2) the emplastre sanguiboetos, nor does Arderne give the formulæ for their preparation.

43/40. Unguementum viride. The green ointment in the later pharmacy (1733) consisted of Verdigris; Ung. Aegyptiacum; Oint. of Elder; Colophony and Oil of Spike. The Ung. Aegyptiacum was ascribed to Mesue, and in its simplest form was compounded with verdigris, honey and the sharpest vinegar.

44/38. Women held a well-recognised position as practitioners of medicine in the Middle Ages, and several of the matronæ or mulieres Salernitanae attained renown at the School of Salernum. The best known is Trotula de Ruggiero, who wrote "de mulierum passionibus." But Arderne seems to allude here to the "ladies bountiful" of his time, for whom he had no great regard. Guy de Chauliac puts them last of his five sects of medical practitioners. The first contained Roger, Roland and the Four Masters who treated wounds with poultices; the second, like Bruno and Theodoric, used dressings of wine and dried up the wounds; the third included William Salicet and Lanfrank, who occupied, he says, a position intermediate between the other two sects. The fourth class embraced those who had been trained on the battlefield, and for whom
Arderne had a sneaking regard; they treated their wounds with charms, oil and wool, and said that God has given virtue to words, herbs and stones (cf. 104/15); whilst the fifth class consisted "of women and many idiots who refer all their sicknesses to the Saints."

45/1. **Drink of Antioch.** Harl. 2378 MS. [B], p. 25, gives a receipt for "The Drink of Auntioch.—Take 1 handful of daysye and 1 handful of bugle and 1 handful of red coole and 1 handful of strebery-wyses [stalks] and 1 handful of fenule and half an handful of hempe and as mych of aunce, as myche of tansey, as mych of herbe Robert [cf. 54/17], as mych of mader, as mych of confiry, iii branch of orpyne, vi croppes of brere, vi croppes of red netle, and thysse herbes ben sothen in 1 galoun of whyt wyn In-to a potell, and afterward put thereto as mych of hony clariffied and after the myldyng set it over the fyr and thanne steme it a litil, and this drynk schal ben vsed in this manere: zif to hym that is wounded or brysed by þe morwen of this drynk iii spounful and vi spounful of water and loke that the seke be wel kept fro gotouse [gouty] metes and drynkys, and from wymmen, and loke also that the maladie be heled with brere-lynes or with leues of the rede coole." ("Medical Works of the XIV cent.," by Rev. Prof. G. Henslowe, 1899, p. 77.) There was also an antidote of Antiochus. It was an ancient preparation composed of germander, agaric, colocynth, Arabian stæchas, opoponax, sagapenum, parsley, aristolochia, white pepper, cinnamon, lavender, myrhz and honey. It was used in melancholy, hydrophobia and epilepsy. This was known as Antiochi hiera. There was also a theraieum of Antiochus which was also an antidote to every kind of poison. It contained thyme, opoponax, millet, trefoil, fennel, aniseed, nigella sativa and other herbs.

45/31. A *porret* is a young leek or onion—a scallion—says the New English Dictionary.

46/25. Arderne gives in these passages a tolerably clear account of the condition known to us as tuberculous dactylitis, and to our immediate predecessors as spina ventosa. Cf. 21/2.

47/25. Arderne is perfectly honest in his statements, and does not claim this patient as a cure.

47/28. The *bntz of the knee* is the bow or bend of the knee.

48/2. The *pede lyon* is the Leontopetalum, Brumaria, Lion's leaf. It was considered to be good against the bites of serpents; the root applied helps the Sciatica and cleanses old filthy ulcers.

48/18. *A spature.* The Spathomele or spatula probe is the commonest of the classical surgical instruments. It consists of a long shaft with an olivary point at one end and a spatula at the other. The oliv end was used for stirring medicaments and the spatula for spreading them, when it was employed in pharmacy. But it was so handy that it was often used as a blunt dissector, as Arderne did in this case. It was also used by painters for preparing and mixing their colours. See Dr. Milne, "Surgical Instruments in Greek and Roman Times," p. 58.

48/32. *Ventose.* The cupping instruments were either of horn, copper, or glass, and they were used either with or without scarifications—wet or dry cupping.

48/38. This appears to be Arderne's sole piece of correct anatomical knowledge, except the information he had gained as to the position of the superficial veins of the arms and legs. Cf. 49/12.
49/14. The treatise on Fistula ends abruptly with the words "flesshe, etc." The manuscript continues on the opposite page in a different hand, and with an account of isolated cases, inflammation in the arm and leg, with Arderne's treatment.

49/38. The first case seems to be one of thrombosis. The vena hepatica is the vena hepatica of the arm and not of the liver. The vein arises on the back of the hand near its ulnar edge, taking origin from the plexus on the back of the hand and fingers. It ascends to the ulnar side of the forearm, where it is called the anterior cubital vein. It was known to medieval anatomists as the Salvatella (cf. 61/22), that on the right side being the salvatella hepatica, and the vein on the left arm the salvatella splenetics. In like manner the external saphenous vein was known as the salvatella pedis aut saphena. William of Salicet (Ed. Pifteau, p. 459) describes them carefully, saying, "Salvatella, hepatica in manu dextra, et splenectica in manu sinistra, quae est inter digitum annularem et auricularem. . . Salutella pedis aut saphena."

50/1. *Dove's dung* remained in use until after 1733. Alleyne, in his "New English Dispensatory," p. 146, col. 2, says: "The dung is sometimes ordered in cataplasms to be applied to the soles of the feet in malignant fevers and deliriums with an intent to draw the humours downwards; which may not be ill-guessed."

50/7. Arderne gives an account of his early experience of arsenic as a dressing on page 83.

50/24. *Auropigment* is opiminent, or native yellow arsenic.

52/8. The word *garse*, to scarify, seems to have an interesting history if, as the New English Dictionary suggests, it is derived through the Latin from the Greek χαράσσειν, to cut or incise, and has given origin to the English garish or gash.

52/14. *Epithimation* was identical with the modern fomentation of wounds and inflamed parts. Guy de Chauliac in his seventh treatise, Doct. i, chap. iv (Ed. Nicole, p. 605): says, "Embrocations and Epithems are simple or compound solutions with which the limbs are bathed and fomented. Sponges or linen being wrung out of them are applied to the part, and are frequently changed."

52/15. *Salsequium* is the chicory or endive; marigold being Calendula officinalis.

52/26. A *felon* was originally any small abscess or boil, but in later times the term was restricted more especially to a whitlow. The gloss *anthrace* written in a contemporary hand seems to imply that Arderne was using the word in its earlier sense and to signify a carbuncle.

52/28. The *canon* seems to have suffered from an attack of gouty eczema, which ended in thrombosis and the formation of a callous ulcer of the leg.

53/15. A *mormale* was an inflamed sore, especially on the leg. Readers of Chaucer will remember of the Cook in the Prologue, line 386, "But great harm was it as it thought me That on his schynne a mormal hadde he." Arderne adopted the treatment still used for callous ulcers: he applied firm pressure, cleansed it, and afterwards applied a stimulating ointment.

54/17. *Herb Robert* is the Geranium Robertianum. It is said to have been called after Robert, Duke of Normandy, to whom the "Regimen Sanitatis Salerni" was inscribed; but it may refer to Knecht Ruprecht, a
German forest spirit. It was thought to be cleansing and binding, stopping blood and helping ulcers.

54/37. The *vena basilica*. Cf. 49/38, p. 121.

55/1. The *sophaena vein*. Cf. 49/38, p. 121.

55/3. The introduction to the "Treatise on Piles" is much shortened in this translation. The Latin text runs thus, and I am indebted to Miss E. M. Thompson for the transcription—

"Extractus pro emoroidis secundum Lanfrancum."

"Extracta emoroidarum secundum Lanfrancum bononensem discretissimun Regis Francie qui duos libros cirurgie composuit, viz. minorem qui incipit sic 'Attendens, venerabilis amice Bernarde componere librum,' etc. Majorem vero qui incipit sic. 'Protector rite sperancium deus excelsus et gloriosus cuius nomen sit benefictum in secula,' etc. ¶ 'Omne quod investigari potest vno trium modorum investigari potest aut per ejus nomen,' etc. ¶ Item extracta emoroidarum secundum magistrum Bernardum de Gordon' in suo libro, quem librum composit dictus Bernardus apud Montem Pessulanum i.[e.] Mont Peteris, anno dominii millesimae ccc iii° et anno lecture suo xx° qui sic incipit 'Interrogatus a quodam Socrates quomodo posset optime dicere Respondit si nichil dixeris nisi quod optime scieris nichil autem optime scimus nisi quod a nobis frequenter dictum est et quod ab omnibus receptum est.' ¶ Item extracta a passionario Magistri Bartholomei qui sic incipit: 'Assiduis peticionibus mi karissime compendiose morborum signa causas et curas inscriptis redigere cogitis,' etc. ¶ Item extracta a micrologio Magistri Ricardi excellentis industrie et a libro Magistri Rolandi et a libro Magistri Gwidonis de gracia pauperum et a practica Rogeri Baron. Et a practica Rogerini et a practica Magistri Johannitii Jamarcii et Gilbertini ac aliorum plurium expertorum quorum doctrinam inspexi et practizando que experciora reperi in hoc libello domino mediante innotescent. ¶ Ricardo qui incipit si quid agam preter solitum veniam date cun[c]ti. ¶ Rolandus Rogerus Braun Rogerinus, Johannitius, Jamarcus, Gwidon, Gilbertinus."

Arderne shows here the extent of his reading in connection with haemorrhoids in the same manner as he does in his commentary on Giles of Corbeuil's treatise de Urinis, where he also quotes his authorities. The first thing perhaps that strikes us is the number of books to which he had access. Books during his lifetime were a luxury of the rich, and those who know the early history of the University of Oxford will remember the gratitude with which the gifts of books from Duke Humphry and the Duke of Bedford were received from 1439 onwards, as "life-giving showers wherewith the vineyard was rendered fruitful, and from which an abundant supply of oil from the olive trees of the University might be expected." Arderne may, of course, have spent his fees in buying MSS. just as some of us do at the present day, but it is probable that he had access to the Libraries of his patrons like John of Gaunt, who were men of letters as well as of affairs, and he was thus able to quote verbatim et literatim, as in the present instance.

Lanfrank of Milan, as has been said (cf. Forewords, p. xxv), was a pupil of William de Salicet. He was one of the great teachers of Surgery at Paris, and died in 1306. The "Chirurgia magna" was issued in 1295-6 as an enlarged edition of the "Chirurgia parva" published in 1270. He taught that Anatomy was the foundation of Surgery.

Bernard of Gordon was Professor at Montpellier, where he began to teach in 1285, and published his "Lilium medicina" in 1305. The words
quoted by Arderne are printed in the 1542 edition of the "Lilium" as the first words of the Preface. Arderne gives the date as 1303. The Lyons and Paris editions both give it 1305.

Master Bartholomew of Salernum was a pupil of Constantinus Africanus late in the eleventh century. Arderne is mistaken in ascribing the "Passionarius" to him. The book, which is often called the "Passionarius Galeni," was really written by Gariopontus, a teacher at Salernum early in the eleventh century. The edition printed at Basel in 1531 gives the authorship correctly, but the Lyons edition in 1526 calls it Galen's.

Master Richard seems to be Richard the Englishman already mentioned. Cf. 11/20, p. 113. He was also called Ricardus senior, and was a Master at Salerno at the end of the twelfth century. He also lived in France and in England. His book, "Micrologus," is a collection of short treatises written at different times: (1) Practica, (2) De Urinis, (3) Anatomia, (4) Repressiva, (5) Prognostica. Taken alone Micrologus would probably refer to the "Practica." None of Richard's works have been printed.

Master Roland was from Parma, and he edited in 1264 the "Practica Chirurgiae," which was written by Master Roger in 1180. Roger's book was sometimes called "Rogerina," or "Rogerina major, medius et minor." It was often attributed to Roger Bacon. This was the text-book upon which the Four Masters wrote their celebrated Commentary. "Roger and Roland," says Sir Clifford Allbutt ("The Historical Relations of Medicine and Surgery," Lond. 1905, p. 27), "stand like Twin Brethren in the dawn of modern medicine bearing the very names of romance. Roger's book was no mere cooking of Albucasis. Before Theodoric, Roger refracted badly united bones. For hæmorrhage he used stytptics, the suture or the ligature; the ligature he learned no doubt from Paul."

Master Guido is Guy de Chauliac, the contemporary of Arderne, for he flourished in the second half of the fourteenth century. Guy took orders and was physician to Pope Clement VI at Avignon; Arderne with a bias towards religion remained a layman. Both were Master surgeons. Guido held with Lanfrank that Anatomy was the basis of Surgery; Arderne drifted towards drugs, words and charms, and knew no anatomy.

Roger de Barone or de Varone is credited with a treatise "Summa Rogerii," or "Practica parva." The date is disputed, but it was probably written at Montpellier late in the thirteenth century.

Johannice is Johannitius Honein Ben Ishak (809-873), the son of a Christian Apothecary, and one of the great translators of medical works from Greek into Arabic. His introduction to Galen's "Microteclini" was issued in Latin under the title "Isagoge Johannitii."

Jamarcius, in all probability, is Johannes Jamerius, a surgeon of the school of Salernum. Guy de Chauliac quotes him no less than forty times, and says in one passage: "Jamerius followed, who made a sort of rough surgery in which there were many pointless things, but he was chiefly a disciple of Roland" ("Puis est trouvé Jamier qui a fait quelque Chirurgie brute, en laquelle il a meslé plusieurs fadeizes, toutefois en beaucoup de choses il a suivy Rogier," Cap. i, p. 14, Ed. Nicaise). Dr. Pansier (Janus, 1903) gives an account of the manuscripts of his works at Oxford and Paris, and Prof. Pagel of Berlin has published a manuscript of his surgery (Berlin, 1909), under the title "Chirurgia Jamati."

Master Gilbertyne is Gilbert the Englishman. Cf. 11/20, p. 113.

55/17. Anence is clearly a variant of Anent, i. e. "according to."

55/24. This passage shows how little the people have learned about medical terms since John Arderne wrote this treatise. "Piles" is still a generic name for all diseases of the rectum in the out-patient room of a
hospital, and no one who has had much experience takes a diagnosis of piles as correct until he has verified it by examination.

55/29. John Damascene is the name under which the fourteenth-century writers on surgery concealed the identity of the elder Serapion, who lived in the ninth century. Some of his works were published under the name of Janus Damascenus. The Pandects in seven books were translated into Latin under the name of the Breviarius. Cf 12/1, p. 113.

56/7. Avicenna, the Prince of Science, was born near Bokhara in 980 A.D. and early showed his precocity, for he knew the Koran and several books of philosophy by heart when he was ten years old. His genius turned first to law, but at the age of 16 he had made such progress in medicine as to warrant his appointment as personal physician to the Sultan Ben Mansur. "Wein, Weib und Gesang" killed him at the age of 57, in June 1037, but not before he had written his "Canon," which was translated into Latin in the twelfth century and remained a text-book until the middle of the seventeenth century.

57/30. Morphew was a general name given to skin eruptions which changed their colour. The white morphew appears to have been an early stage of leprosy in some cases; vitiligo in others. Black morphew was a general term which included many different diseases of the skin.

59/32. Ægidius Corboliensis, or Gilles de Corbeil, was descended from the Counts of Corbeil, and devoted himself to the study of medicine at Salerno. He is said to have taught medicine at that school, and afterwards from the end of the twelfth to the beginning of the thirteenth century to have lived at Paris as Major-domo and Physician to Philip Augustus (1180-1223). His two works, "De Urinis, de Pulsibus, de Virtutibus et laudibus compositorum medicamentorum" and "De Signis et symptomatibus ægrotitudinum" are in metre and expressed in classical Latin far superior to that of contemporary medical authors. Arderne wrote a commentary in English upon the "Tractatus de urinis," and a copy of it exists in the Hunterian Library at Glasgow. It is described in the Catalogue (p. 264) as:—328. Ægidii Corboliensis, Tractatus Metricus de Vrinis. Master John Arderne, Commentary in English on the above Treatise "De Vrinis." (Press Mark U. 7. 22; Q. 7. 16; Q. 7. 130.) Description. Vellum 7½ x 5½ ff. 68, originally ff. 69 (or ff. 70); well written in a plain hand in single cols. of about 29 lines, each 5½ - 5¼ x 3½, margined with brown crayon, not ruled, signatures, traces only left, practically all gnawed off (by beetles) where not cropped, catchwords, foliation modern (in pencil), rubrics, rubricated initials and Ʌ Ʌ, running titles, initials touched with vermilion, marginalia much cropped, writing retouched in places, fol. sec. blank. Early Cent. xv. Binding, thin beech boards, covered quarter calf, coarse dark blue paper sides. Early Cent. xviii.

Collation. Two paper fly-leaves (i?) both attached || 18—38, 47 (8), 58—78, 87(8), 9 (9). Two fly-leaves (ii?), ii, 2. attached; 4, 6 is cut out (probably to remove a miswritten leaf as the text is continuous); 8, 3 is a half sheet (probably so originally).

Contents:—i. Ægidius (Gilles) of Corbeil's Treatise (in Latin verse) on Urines, with Master John Arderne's Commentary.

Beginns (l. i (f. i) r. lines 1-8); E (rubricated initial with gestures) go Magister Johannes Arderonn hanc (struck out) hoc (above) opusculum composui de Judicijs Vrinarum per coloris et contenta secundum Indicium Egidij. et ypocratis. Walterij. Gils. Gilberti, Gordoni. Johannis de Sancto Amando. ysaac. Auicenne, theophili, Galyeni. Galterij et tholomej. in medicinam et medicum domini regis illustrissimi principis henrici

Ends (6, 5 (f. 44) v°. line 26); ¶ vryn black and watery in a fat manne morten significat.

60/6. Noli-me-tangere. Guy de Chauliac (ivme traité Doct. i, ch. vi, p. 318, Ed. Nicaise), speaking of chancre ulceré, says that Guillaume de Salicet called it "Noli-me-tangere because the more it was meddled with the worse it became (Finalement, Guillaume de Salicet juge, que chancre est maladie despitue et fascheuse, d'autant que plus on la manie, plus il est indigné. Parquoy il conseille que ne soit touché, sinon légerement, et a cette cause est appellé Noli-me-tangere)." I cannot find the passage in Pifteau’s edition of Salicet’s Surgery.

60/24. Millefolle is the yarrow—Achillæa Millefolium—though Apuleius, according to Dr. Prior, seems to have meant the horse-tail, Equisetum.

60/27. Bursa pastoris is the Shepherd’s purse, Capsella bursa, which was long considered an excellent styptic.

Parencis is the Periwinkle, the Vinca major and minor. It seems to have derived its name from the Latin Perivincula because it was used for chaplets.

61/5 and 12. So long as the blood was looked upon as stationary it was a common belief that the vein from which the blood was taken altered the result. Arderne teaches here that letting blood from the external saphenous vein stopped bleeding from a pile, whilst bleeding from the internal saphenous vein increased the hæmorrhage.

61/22. The vena salvatella (cf. 49/38, p. 121) ran along the back of the hand between the third and fourth metacarpal bones. Patients were bled from it when they were chronic invalids owing to “congestion of the liver or spleen,” says Prof. Nicaise.

61/23. There is here a clear distinction made between the clumsy phlebotome with its halbert shape and the more delicate and easily manipulated lancet (cf. 24/21).

62/6. It is clear from this passage that Arderne was as unwilling to demean himself by breathing a vein as we should now be to crop a poll. Both were the duties of the barber, who was clearly in an inferior position.

62/14. This mutilated passage runs in another English translation (Sloane MS. No. 76), "Alsoe Gordon saythe that in ouer mich or greate fluxe in reasonable aged persoones nothinge avayleth moare then pouringe, for the grosse and slymye matter being pурged awaye the medicyns restrictyue shall worke the better. Mirobalans will worke excellently in that case for theye pourge before and stoppe after them, that is, it loseneth by reason of his swiftness in digestion and bringeth forth all grosse humour with yt. yt must be warely prepared, whose preparation is pis. It must be dissolved with warme mylke and whaye and not boyled or sodden with anythinge, for by boylinge the gummy substance vadeth awaye in the smooke and so the strength thereof ys weakened."

62/32. The meaning of this passage seems obscure at first, but Arderne says that myrobalani in their different forms were good against the different humours recognised by the ancient physicians—Sanguis, choler, melancholia and phlegma. "Myrobalani are the fruit of several species of Terminalia and of the Phyllanthus emblica," says "Mayne’s Expository Lexicon" (Sydenham Soc. edition). They contain a large quantity of tannin and in
the M. chebula, some gallic acid. They were much employed by the Arabian physicians in many diseases; some lauding them as emetics and cathartics which purged away all evil humours; and others as useful in the treatment of diarrhoea and dysentery, acting first as a laxative and then as an astringent—the view taken by Arderne, cf. 62/14. They were formerly much employed in European medicine, but are not now used. The dose was 2 to 8 drachms. Myrobalani citrina is the fruit of a variety of Terminalia chebula; they were sometimes called White Galls. Kebuliz is the fruit of the terminalia chebula which resembles M. bellerica in figure and ridges, but is larger and darker with a thicker pulp.

Indi, or Myrobalani indicae, are probably the unripe fruit of Terminalia chebula and T. bellerica. These black myrobalans are oblong shaped and have no stone.

The belleric myrobalans are the fruit of Terminalia bellerica. They are yellowish-grey in colour and roundish or oblong in shape. The Emblici are the produce of the Emblica officinalis or the Phyllanthus emblica, a plant inhabiting the East Indies and frequently cultivated. The dried fruits are used as a purge and also as a tanning agent.

63/22. Storax calamita is the dry resin of the Storax tree.

63/25. Porcelane or Porcelain is the older name of Portulaca communis, purslane. It was recommended at first as a great assuager of choleric heat; afterwards as a cure for scorbuty and all skin eruptions; and lastly as an ingredient in salads.

63/29. The Latin text gives lapis haematites for lapis omoptoeis.

Hæmatites. The bloodstone is found in iron mines in Germany and Bohemia of a black, yellowish, or iron colour. The best is brittle, very black and even, free from filth, and of a Cinnabar-like colour. It is to be reduced into a most subtle powder by levigation with plantain water. It is good against the gout, fluxes of the Womb and Belly, spitting blood and bleeding at the nose; mixed with woman's milk it helps blear eyes and suffusions.

ypoquistid is Hypocistis, the juice of the root of the shrub Cistis or Holly Rose dried in the sun. It was regarded as an astringent, and Acacia was used as a substitute for it. Sumak is the rhus obsoniorum of which the fruits were looked upon as cooling and astringent.

Quinque-Nervia is the Plantago lanceolata or Ribwort, of which the distilled water "helps spitting and pissing blood, and the Pysick, stops the Courses, eases the Cholick and heals a Dysenteria, cools inflammations, dissolves nodes and mundifies Fistulas. The Essence is better," says Salmon in 1678.

64/1. This passage is given in greater detail in the later English translation (Sloane MS. 76), where it runs: "Of the Emmorroydes and Menstrualles. The Emorroydes or menstrualles flowinge strongly, or the pacient sore afflicted with the force of blood, ye must consider of the suerest waye and that which returns blood fastest. First, if the pacient be not very weake, let him bleed somethinge of both Basillic voynes of the arme and set cuppinge glasses under woman's breistes and so doinge and by bindinge the armes paynedly will provoke the humours to returne, and after that use local remedyes."

64/6. Muscilage dragaunte. This should certainly be Muscilage Dragagant. Arderne is careful to explain the difference between Dragaunte and Dragagant. 79/3-4. Dragant is a crude sulphate, acting as an astringent, whilst dragagant is tragacanth.
64/11. Red coral was long used as an astringent in diarrhoea and in the form of a compound syrup, and it was employed as a teething powder for children. It is still used as a charm against the evil eye in London, for most babies' rattles mounted in silver are tipped with a piece of red coral.

64/13. Canell. Arderne's translator uses canell throughout as the equivalent of Cinnamomum.

64/18. Coprose is Green Vitriol. Salmon says in 1678: “This owes its colour to Iron; in London it is well known that most of the old iron which is gathered by many poor people is sold to the Copperas houses at Rotherhithe and Deptford, which they boil up with a dissolution of the Pyrites, which is a stone found on the shore of the Isle of Shepey and other such like places, and let the liquor run out into convenient vessels or Cisterns in which it shoots into those forms we meet with amongst druggists. It is chiefly used as an Astringent.”

64/25. Kynnyng is clearly a variant of the more common form chine, to burst open or split. It is still in familiar use, as in the Chines of the Isle of Wight.

64/32. Arderne shows both in this passage and in previous ones (cf. 7/39, p. 112) that neurasthenia was not unknown in his practice.

64/36. Cliffyng. This is an early instance of the confusion between Cliff and clift, the original form of Cleft.

65/27. Psidie was pomegranate rind: Balaustia being the flowers of the wild pomegranate—Punica sylvestris.

Mummē was divided into five forms. (1) A factitious made of bitumen and Pitch-Pissasphaltum; (2) Flesh of the carcase dried in the Sun, in the country of the Hammonians between Cyrene and Alexandria, being Passengers buried in the Quick-sands; (3) Egyptian, a liquor sweating from carcases embalmed with Pissasphaltum; (4) Arabian, a liquor which sweats from carcases embalmed with Myrrh, Aloes, and Balsam; (5) Artificial, which is Modern. Of all which the two last are the best, but the Arabian is scarcely to be got; the second and third sorts are sold for it. The artificial or modern mummy is made thus: “Take the carcase of a young man (some say red hair'd) not dying of a disease, but killed; let it lie 24 hours in clear water in the Air; cut the flesh in pieces, to which add powder of myrrh and a little Aloes; imbibe it 24 hours in the spirit of wine and Turpentine, take it out, hang it up twelve hours; imbibe it again 24 hours in fresh spirit, then hang up the pieces in dry air and a shadowy place, so will they dry and not stink.” (Salmon, “The New London Dispensatory,” 1678, p. 194.) There was a tincture, an essence, an elixir and a balsam of this precious medicine. It dissolved congealed and coagulated blood, provoked the terms, expelled the wind out of both the bowels and the Veins, helped Coughs and was a great Vulnerary. It was also said to purge. The dose was a drachm.

Olibanum is frankincense, the resin obtained from Boswellia Carteri. It was employed as a stimulating expectorant, as an emmenagogue, as an ointment in skin diseases and some diseases of the eyes, and as an ingredient of stimulating plasters.

66/3. Red Jasper was considered to be of the nature of the blood stone, for it not only stops bleedings at the nose and other fluxes of blood but also the flux of the terms.

Saphir. “The Saphire is either Oriental or Occidental, and of each
there are Male and Female. It is a glorious, clear, transparent, blew, or sky-coloured stone, these are the Males. The females are white and unripe, so they want colour. The stone laid whole to the forehead stays the bleeding at the nose. You may dissolve it in juice of Lemons or Spirit of Vinegar and so use it; drunk in wine it helps against the stinging of scorpions. You may also beat it into a powder and levigate it with rosewater."

"The Ruby or Carbuncle is either white or red; being drunk, it restrains Lust and makes a man lively and cheerful."

66/4. The dung of swine helps the bitings and stinging of serpents, Scorpions, and Mad-dogs. It softens, discusses, and cures hard tumours, Scrophulas, Corns, Warts, Bleeding at the nose, Itch, Small-pox, Scabs, Fractures, Luxations, Wounds, Burns, Scalds, stops Bleeding, etc.

66/7. The belief in the juice of nettle as a blood purifier still lingers among us. As a child I had repeated attacks of urticaria; on several occasions I was ordered a tumblerful of the infusion of nettles to be taken hot and in the morning, fasting, but so far as I remember without effect either in shortening the intervals between the attacks or curing their painfulness.

66/19. A streit wound: cf. "streit is the gate and narrow is the way which leadeth unto life" (Matt. vii. 14).

66/25. Arderne here recommends the use of acupressure as a means of arresting hemorrhage.

67/8. Comyn. Dr. Prior derives this word from the Arabic al qamoun. It is the Cuminum cyminum. Its seeds have long been in general use as a stomachic.

67/13. Orpine is the Sedum Telephium, a well-known inmate of the cottage garden, being esteemed as a vulnerary. The Latin text gives Succus ebulae, juice of the Danewort or Dwarf elder.

67/28. The Lombards as an enterprising trading community in London are mentioned again in the Treatise on Clysters; cf. 76/32.

67/28. Two kinds of ink seem to have been used by the surgeons in the fourteenth century, Attramentum and Encaustum. The Attramentum seems to have been a sulphate containing powdered galls, whilst the encaustum—literally, purple ink reserved for the royal use—was made with Chalcantum, a generic name for the sulphates of copper, iron and zinc. Salicet (Ed. Pifteau, p. 207) used the purple ink to stain the bone for the purpose of discovering a line or fracture of the skull. Henri de Mondeville (Ed. Nicaise, p. 506) marked out his flaps with it before amputating. Guy de Chauliac (Ed. Nicaise, p. 343) employs attramentum (cf. 40/27, p. 119), as a local astringent in piles, and (p. 521) uses the purple ink for surface marking.

67/31. Bdellium is a gum resin somewhat resembling very impure myrrh. It is the product of various species of Balsamodendron.

67/32. Anteros was anthera, semen rosarum. Rose threads, viz. the yellow threads in the middle of the flowers. They were used with dentifrices and to dry up defluxions.

67/34. This Demetrius may have been Demetrius II, King of Georgia, son of David III, who came to the throne in 1126 and died 1158. He was constantly at war with the Mussulmen. It may have been his son Demetrius III who died 1289. Arderne perhaps heard the story from those who had been to Lithuania with Sir Geoffrey Scrope. Cf. 14/4, p. 114.
67/39 and 68/1. The Cuckoo’s Bread is the Oxalis Acetosella. It is called also Cuckoo’s Meat or Gowk’s Meat and Wood Sorrel. It was called Hallelujah because it blossomed between Easter and Whitsuntide, the season at which the 113th to the 117th Psalms were sung. Arderne’s translator calls it Alleluia. Cf. 68/1.

68/14. Galang is the name given to two kinds of roots obtained from a species of Alpinia, the greater and smaller galanga. The word itself is said to be a corruption of the Chinese liang-kiang, mild ginger.

69/1. Arderne gives the reason for using Crocus or Saffron with opium (cf. 101/35), because it acted as a bridle to that drug.

69/14. This appears to be the original prescription for the Valence which handed Arderne’s name down to posterity until after the publication of the “Pharmacopoeia Londinensis.” (Cf. Forewords, pp. xxx–xxxi.) My copy, said to be the editio quarta, with the frontispiece dated 1632, says (p. 155), “Valentia Scabiosae Iohannis Ardernii, ex Oppido (vulgo) Newark in Comitatu Nottingham; Chirurgi exerciatissimi; qui floruit anno 1370; tempore Edouardi tertii Regis Angliae, ipsissimis verbis ex antiquo manuscripto excerpta. . . Tapsivalencia ejusdem authoris. . . Tapsimel ejusdem. . . Hæc ad verbum ex veteri Manuscripto et stylo suo.”

69/29. Populeon was an ointment made from the buds of the white poplar or Aspen tree. Cf. 77/3.

70/19. Furfur is Bran. It entered very largely into the materia medica of the older leeches.

71/21. A welked grape; cf. Chaucer, Pardoner’s Tale, l. 270, “For which ful pale and welked is my face,” in the sense of wrinkled or shrivelled.

71/26. This short treatise on Tenesmus is excellent from a professional point of view, and it does not appear that the use of the term has materially altered in the course of the centuries which have elapsed since Arderne wrote it.

71–74. These are the passages which show Arderne to be a first-rate observer independent of book work. The prognosis holds good to this day. If the enema is returned at once either the bowel is paralysed because the patient is moribund from some obstruction which may be situated high up, or there may be an obstruction near the anus without paralysis, or the bowel is blocked by the impaction of faeces consequent upon obstinate constipation. In the last case the patient may recover, and Arderne says therefore that his rule is not without exceptions.

72/9. Diagredium is made from scammony by putting the powder into a hollow quince, covering it with a paste and baking it in an oven or under ashes.

72/12. The iliac passion was a general name for intestinal obstruction at a time when morbid anatomy was unknown. It included a variety of conditions from simple colic to suppurrative peritonitis in all its forms. The scene closed with faecal vomiting, as no attempt was ever made to treat it by surgical means.

72/20. Scariola is the endive, Cichorium Endivia.

72/23. The dusty meal of the mine is only the finest flour used as a vehicle to make the grease and honey into a mass.

72/27. Cabbage, Brassica sativa or Caulis, was much used by the school of Salernum, and Arderne mentions it previously. Cf. 70/19 and 72/27.

ARDERNE.
72/28. *Fenigreke* is the fænum græcum, whose seeds were used in emollient clysters, for they are mucilaginous.

73/6. *Melilotus* is here explained by Arderne as the tops of colewort, but the term is usually applied to M. officinalis, the dried flowers of which were used for making poultices. Two varieties were recognised, the white and the yellow.

73/30. The translator has omitted the passage about the ostrich feather and the Prince of Wales which is given in Forewords, p. xxvii. It should come after the word *lure*.

73/32. *Cymbalarie* is the Pennywort—Linaria Cymbalaria—so called from its round leaves. It was good "against all inflammations and hot tumours, St. Antonie’s fire and Kibed heels.”

74/2. *Triasantalorum*. There were three kinds of Sandal in use, album, rufum, and citrinum. Triasantalorum therefore is a confection of the three Sandals just as Diatriptonpipereon is a confection of the three peppers.

74/26. Salicet (Ed. Pifteau) gives two formulas (pp. 171 and 504) for making an Unguentum Apostolorum. The ointment contained white wax: pine resins, aristolochia, incense, mastic, opoponax, myrrh, galbanum, litharge, etc. Guy de Chauliac (Ed. Nicaise, p. 617) gives a similar formula, and adds that Mesue named it Cerasesos, but Master Anserin de la Porte and Master Pierre de l’Argentiere of Montpellier call it Gratia Dei, because it cures bad ulcers so wonderfully. Henri de Mondeville (Ed. Nicaise, p. 800) calls it the green ointment of the Twelve Apostles on account of its twelve chief ingredients, and states that some writers call it Unguentum Apostolicon, others Unguentum Veneris, or simply the Plaister.

74/30. Pellitory of the wall is the Parietaria officinalis. It grows on old walls and was thought to draw lime from the mortar.

74/31. Allusion to this interpolation in the text is made in Forewords (p. xii). It shows that the translation here printed cannot be earlier than 1413, the year of Henry IV’s death.

74/33. The short treatise on Enemata is written to show Arderne’s improvements in apparatus as well as in methods. He is, as usual, ahead of his contemporaries in simplifying both.

75/23. *Rerepipgre*. This word seems to be a mistake of the copyst for Hiera pigre, Yera pigra, or iera pigra. The sacred bitter, an aloetic purgative which has long been popular. Dr. Payne says it is still sold in the shops of herbalists under the debased name of “Hackry-Packry.” The usual formula was that given by Galen.

76/19. *Mercurialis*. The English mercury—chenopodium is sometimes called Good Henry—the all-good, to distinguish it from a poisonous form. The Grimms in their “Wörterbuch” explain this name as having reference to elves and kobolds, which were called “Heinz” or “Heinrich,” and as indicating supernatural powers in the plant (Dr. Prior, p. 94). It was thought to be laxative, and was long given by nurses to children with their food.


76/36. This passage may mean either that the patients came to Arderne, or that they were relieved before he got home again.

77/12. This is an early use of the treatment of chronic constipation by abdominal massage, which has lately become fashionable again.

78/25. Arderne is here advocating rectal feeding which is now commonly used and with excellent results.

79/1. This last treatise is only a fragment in the present translation. A much fuller text is found in the Bodleian Library, where it exists in three parts. The first MS, Ashmole 1434, leaf 117, begins "Attramento-rum, i.e. vitriolorum," and ends "facit calcantum." This corresponds, therefore, with p. 79, line 1 to page 81, line 23. The second part is in MS. Digby 161, leaf 16. It begins, "Alumen zucarimum vulgariter alums-
glas," and ends leaf 23, back, "nobillissimum est ad regem." The transla-
tion only contains a small part of this as it ends at page 85, line 22. The third part is in Ashmole MS. 1434, leaf 128, back, to leaf 131. It gives a good account of Arderne's treatment of Scabies by which he made a great deal of money (cf. 6/4, p. 111).

79/1. This passage explains itself. Dragant is Tragacanth, a gummy exudation obtained from incisions made in the stem of Astragalus gemmifer. It is a demulcent and is still used in medicine as a vehicle to suspend heavy and insoluble powders like the subnitrate of bismuth.

79/4. Dragant is a modification of Chalcanthum from chalcis or vitriol romanum. Cf. 64/6. Calcothar is the red oxide of iron obtained by calcining sulphate of iron or green coperose.

79/10. Platearius was the name of a distinguished medical family living in the twelfth century. John, the elder, wrote "Practica brevis" and "Regulae urinarum." John, the son, wrote "Tractatus de aegritudinum curatione" and "De conferentibus et nocentibus corporis humani." Matthew, brother of John the son, made a name for himself, but his writings are unknown. Matthew (floruit 1130-1150), grandson of John the elder and son of John the younger, wrote "De simplici medicina liber," quoted from the first words of the text as "circa instans." John, the third son of Matthew the elder and therefore cousin of Matthew "circa instans," was also known to fame.

79/18. Venemyd wound. The expression is still in common use, only we say a "poisoned wound," and bacteriology has given us an explanation of its occurrence.

79/27. Fraudulent ulcers. Guy de Chauliac divides ulcers into corrosive, sordid, cavernous, fistulous and chancre. The fraudulent ulcer is sordid, the characters are a sore or stinking scab. Henri de Mondeville also describes (Ed. Nicaise, p. 421, note) a fraudulent corrosive ulcer.

80/27. Lutum sapiencia, also called lutum sapientum, was used by the alchemists for sealing their vessels. It was made with flour, white of egg, chalk and clay.

80/39. Arderne uses marice as the special term for the uterus, and employs the word womb where we should say "belly." Cf. 11/24, p. 113.

81/11. Pulve: hermodactile. Hermodactylus is a name given to many plants with tuberous roots, notably to hermodactylus tuberosus. One form was used as a cure for gout, and may have been colchicum.

81/30. The scab is here scabies or the itch, a contagious disease which the habits of the time made prevalent through every class of society.
82/31. Arsenic was known at this time in the forms of the yellow sulphide, orpiment or Auripigmentum, and the red sulphide or Realgar. Arderne gives an interesting and evidently truthful account of his early experiences with the drug as a local application. Henri de Mondeville held a similar respect for it, perhaps based also on the grounds of experience, for he says "Realgar is strongly corrosive, dangerous and poisonous" (Ed. Nicaise, p. 850).

85/22. The translator has left out a most interesting case which reads as if the patient had Actinomycosis. Digby MS. 161, leaf 18, gives these details, the translation is mine. "A certain man, however, at Bridgefords-Trent, in the county of Nottingham, had a bad ulcer upon the back of his hand, and there were grains in it like barleycorns full of blood, and if the hand was compressed by the fingers a sanious and stinking discharge was driven out with itching and sometimes with pain." The patient was completely cured after realgar and soap had been applied.

The text runs:—"Quidam homo tamen in Briggeforde super Trent in Comitatu Notyngham, habuit serpiginem granosam super tegum manus et grana erant similia granis oderi plena sanguine et si manus cum digitis compressa sanies sub granis erumpbat cum fetore pruritu et aliquando cum dolore.

"Quando vero post multa medicamina recepta cum pulvere realgar et sapone nigro commixtum totum herpetem predictum bene liniii et fimirte applicauit. Paciens vero ingerentem dolorem per diem naturalem perpessus est, et manus nimis erat inflatus pre dolore et calore. Quo viso, superposui vitellum oui crudum cum oleo rosarum, et manum bene cum dicto oleo permixi tandem incepti fieri diuisio circa extremitates ulceris et medicina predicta nihil nocerat sano corio sed tantuuumodo quod infectum fuerat mortificauit. Continuato vero medicamine de vitello et oleo rosarum tota illa pellis dicte manus infecta, bene est emulsa et omnino separata sine nerorum aut venarum lesione. Qua vero reparata vulnus cum vitello oui crudo et cum melle rosarum mixto et alilita subtilicia cum stupis lini delicatis inter ossa et emplastrum apposita.

"Emplastrum jamdictum super stupas lini mundas extensum superposui et cum hac sola cura peroptime pacientem curauit sine mutilacione nerorum aut venarum. Post consolidacionem vulneris superposui emplastrum de diaquillo resoluto cum unguento malarum et illii et supposui longo tempore donec pellis noua fuerat bene digesta et ne recipercet alterationem a aere vel alio casu contingente."

87/25. These rules show the excellence of Arderne's practice. The simplest dressings were only renewed when it was necessary. He was in every way an opponent of meddlesome surgery, and thus takes a very high place, not only amongst his contemporaries, but amongst all surgeons.

88/9. And yet almost immediately he shows the lack of critical faculty which characterizes so many mediaeval writers. The superstition about the harmfulness of a menstruating woman is well known to all students of folk-medicine. The question is still raised in all seriousness from time to time both in lay and medical papers.

89/7. Pulv. sanguinis veneris. The use of human blood was no new thing. Dr. J. F. Payne has an interesting article on the subject, "Arnold de Villa Nova on the therapeutic use of human blood" (Janus, 1903, pp. 432 and 477). Jamerius (cf. 55/3, p. 123) used a powder which he called "human powder," many years before Arderne, "against all wounds." The formula ran, "B. Symphyti; balaustie, rosarum, squinanti, masticis olibani ana 5ij: aluminis, arilii uvarum ana 3j, atramenti, sanguinis draonis
Notes. Page 89, line 14 to page 100, line 15. 133

ana 388; galbani 389; galle asiame 389: colofonie, boli armenici ana 389: sanguinis humani 390. Effundre super pellem aretis et siccati et ejusdem pellis aretine combuste et pulverijate 390 "[rubric xxxvii].

89/14. Alkanet is the root of Anchusa tinctoria. It was formerly used as an astringent, but is now only used as a colouring material.

89/30. A hollow ulcer or ulcer concavum is the same thing, says Henri de Mondevile (Ed. Nicaise, p. 425), as a deep or hidden ulcer. It is any ulcer whose whole extent is not visible. It is often called by "les ydientes cirurgiens," or "cyryrgici rurales," a fistula, but it differs from a true fistula both in treatment and results.

90/23. The gloss on edere terrestris is useful to identify the plant as the ground-ivy, Hedera helix, because the term hedera terrestris was also applied to the Yew, Taxus baccata—called in Mid. Latin irius. Dr. Prior (op. cit., p. 261) gives a most interesting account of the chain of blunders which led to the confusion between a creeping form of Hedera and a full-grown evergreen shrub.

91/9. Wild fire is a synonym for erysipelas. Cf. 41/1. The Persian fire was sometimes shingles (or herpes zoster): sometimes a carbuncle. St. Anthony's fire meant erysipelas in some cases, ergotinism or endemic gangrene in others.

91/24. Pater noster and Ave maria. On this method of estimating small portions of time see Forewords, p. xxix.

94/35. Curse of humours is the flowing of a discharge, just as we still speak of menstruation in a woman as "the courses."

95/14. Abhominaciones of the stomach. This is a good example of the early spelling of abomination, due, says The New English Dictionary, "To an assumed derivation from ab homine, away from man, inhuman, beastly." It really comes from ab and omen. The word is genuinely expressive of the conditions in gastric catarrh.

97/5. Walwort is the dwarf-elder, Sambucus ebulus.

97/9. Plinius is Pliny the Younger whose "Natural History" is still good reading whether in the original or in Philemon Holland's translation.

Dioscorides is Dioscorides Pedacius who lived in the time of Nero and Vespasian, and was celebrated as the great classical botanist and pharmacologist. His great work, "πελ ἕλην ἰατρίκης," appeared in five books.

Macrobius is quoted also by Guy de Chauliac (Ed. Nicaise, p. 12), and by Gilbertus Anglicus. Macrobius died 415 A.D. He wrote "Saturnalia," containing miscellaneous remarks on physics, antiquities, literary criticism, etc.

98/6. Anthrax is considered both by Salicet and by de Chauliac. Salicet (Ed. Pfeitean, p. 176) says that anthrax and carbuncle are the same, except that anthrax is the more malignant and acute. It was called "Bonne Bube," says Guy (Ed. Nicaise, p. 100), "in the opposite sense because it is very wicked and very dangerous," just as we call the fairies "good folk" or say of a baby "how ugly he is."

100/15. The gymeweç. The New English Dictionary gives this word as a variant of gemew or gemow, the plural of gemel, twins; and of a door double. It gives as a quotation 1523, in Kirkpatrick, "Relig. Ord. Norwich" (1848) 170, "Within the White Friris, in Norwich, at the Jemowe door." It would be interesting to know whether the gymeweç or Jemowe door was peculiar to the Carmelites.

Frere Caromeç. It is clear from the Latin text that the Frere Caromeç were the Carmelites or White Friars who had their convent and church
east of the Temple in London. The Carmelite Convent was founded by Sir Richard Gray in 1241, upon ground given by Edward I. In 1350 Courtenay, Earl of Devon, rebuilt the Whitefriars church, and in 1420 Robert Marshall, Bishop of Hereford, added a steeple. At the Dissolution Dr. Butts was given the Chapter house as a residence. The church was pulled down in the reign of Edward VI, but the refectory of the convent remained as the Whitefriars theatre. The right of sanctuary remained for many years, as is known to every reader of Scott's novels. The Library at Lambeth Palace contains a will (Staff. 2, p. 548, Will 91) dated Feb. 1, 1446, and proved May 12, 1449. The will is made by John Arderne, armiger, who desires to be buried by Margaret his wife, if dying in London, or by Elizabeth his wife, if dying at Leygh. "His body," the document states, "is actually buried in the Carmelite church under the marble tomb with Margaret." The will is dated at St. Margaret's, Westminster, and leaves his effects to John, his son, and Bridget, his daughter.

100/33. In 1376, about the time Arderne was writing this treatise, the Commons petitioned the king "that Ribalds ... and sturdy Beggars may be banished out of every town" (Ribton Turner, "Vagrants and Vagrancy," p. 52).

A truant was any vagabond, beggar or rogue.

100/35. Jusquiamus is henbane, Hyoscyamus niger or alba.

100/36. 3iannie is the cockle or tares which the wicked man sowed (Matt. xiii. 25). Darnel was a general name for all kinds of cornfield weeds, says Dr. Prior (op. cit. 64).

Chessedee is chess-seed, chesses being a name applied to the poppy-chasses and chese boules, from the shape of its capsule.

Bradny root was looked upon as a powerful hydrogogue purging agent, whilst the juice of the plant was a remedy for gout.

The ribald's potion would not have done much harm even in considerable doses.

101/10. Cicuta is water hemlock, the Cicuta virosa.

101/12. Opium is a tear which flows from the wounded heads or leaves of the black poppy, being ripe. Some promiscuously use it with Meconium, but they do ill; for opium is a drop or tear, Meconium the gross expressed juice from the whole plant. However, they are both of one quality: opium is the finer gum and the stronger, Meconium is the coarser and weaker, yet the more malign.

"Opium is three-fold. 1. Black and hard, from Syria and Aden. 2. Yellower and softer, from Cambaia. 3. White, from Cairo or Thebes, which last, commonly called Thebian opium, is the best, being heavy, thick, strong-scented like Poppy, bitter and sharp, inflammable, almost of the colour of Aloes, and easy to dissolve in water. The counterfeit when washed colours the water like saffron." (Salmon's "New London Dispensatory," 1678, p. 167, col. 2.)

101/16. Propoleos is bee bread. Henri de Mondeville in his "Antidote" (Ed. Nicaisse, p. 831) says: "85. Cera, en grec Propolis, en Arabe Schama (Schamua) : elle tient le milieu entre les quatre qualités."

102/3. Castor was long looked upon as "a most noble Drug of great use in all distempers of the head." It is the secretion from the cloacal glands of the castor fiber obtained from the Hudson Bay territory. Its properties have hardly yet been adequately tested, and it is possible that it may regain some of its former prestige.
102/8. The *nux moschata* or *myristica* is the nutmeg, which was looked upon as a comforter of the head and stomach. Mace, which is the arillus of the fruit dried in the sun, has similar properties.

102/8. *Nenufare* is the water-lily used in medicine as an oil, syrup and water. The lily with yellow flowers stoppeth the lask and bloody flux, but the white-flowered lily is the strongest, and is powerful in stopping the Whites, drunk in red wine.

*Mirtelle* is the Rubus hortensis, the garden bramble or dwarf myrtle bush. The leaves astringe and stop fluxes; the fruit and berries bind, cool in fevers, quench thirst, stop vomitings.

102/8. The Manuscript stops here abruptly, but I have copied the charm from another source, partly on account of its intrinsic interest, partly because of the sidelight it sheds on the Duke of Clarence's wedding festivities and of Arderne's desire for secrecy.

104/5. In some of the later manuscripts the words *Enthe* and *Enthanay* have become Gnthe and Gnthenay.

104/8. *Verbum caro factum est* were words of power in the middle ages. Friar Odoric of Pordenone, who was in Northern China about 1320 when the Yang-tsi floods caused the devastation which some think started the Black Death, says ("*Yule, Cathay and the way thither,*" Hakluyt Soc. I, 156, quoted in Creighton's "History of Epidemics," I, 155): "I saw such numbers of corpses as no one without seeing it could deem credible. And at one side of the valley, in the very rock, I beheld as it were the face of a man very great and terrible, so very terrible indeed that for my exceeding great fear my spirit seemed to die in me. Wherefore I made the sign of the Cross, and began continually to repeat *verbum caro factum*, but I dared not at all come nigh that face, but kept seven or eight paces from it."
INDEX.

ABDOMINAL massage after a clyster, 77, 131
Abscess, ischio-rectal, 11, 13
Abscess, mammary, a plaster for, 12
Acacia for piles, 63, 67
Actinomycosis, Arderne’s case of, 132
Acupressure to stop bleeding, 66, 128
Acus rostrata, the snouted needle, xvii, 15, 23, 33, 112
Acute disease, 21
Ægidius Corboliensis, account of, 124
Ægidius Corboliensis is quoted, 59
Ague quartan, piles a preservative from, 57
Albania, persistence of mediaeval methods in, 114
Albucasis, treatment of fistula by, xvi, xvii, 112, 123
Algeiras, siege of, xi, 108
Alkenemistrej, 83
Allbutt, Sir Clifford, quoted, 123
Alleluia, or woodsour, 68, 129
Alleyne, Dr., quoted, xxi, 118, 121
Almonds, oil of, to prepare, 95
Almonds, water of, to prepare, 95
Aloes, 65; bad for piles, 63
Aloes hepaticus, a styptic, 25, 27, 65
Aloes internally, open veins, 67
Aloes locally a styptic, 67
Aloes, the varieties of, 116
Alphice, or barley-meal, 92
Alphita, 66
Alum, 46, 49, 116
Alum combust, 73, 81
Alum glass, 54, 81, 116; preparation of, 82
Alum plume, 54, 88
Alum powder, 67
Alum Rö., 116
Alum scissum, 81
Alum water, preparation of, 82
Alum, varieties of, 116
Alum jucarine, burnt, 35, 40, 65, 86
Alum jucarine, combust, 27, 35, 40
Alum jucaryne, 54, 65, 81
Amenorrhœa, the urine in, 60
Anaesthesia, an ointment, to procure, 101
Anathemasy, piles due to, 58
Anence, meaning of the word, 123
Ani pruritus, 73
Ankles, fistulae of, 46, 47
Anteros, or Rose threads, 67, 128
Anthrace, treatment of, 52, 98
Anthrax, meaning of the term, 123
Anthrax, treatment of, 52, 98
Antioch, drink of, 44, 47
Antioch, formula for the drink of, 120
Antioch, the hiera of, 120
Antioch, the treacle of, 120
Antwerp, Arderne practises at, xii, 108, 117
Anyse, 63
Apii emplastron, 51
Apii, juice of, 49, 50, 72
Apium, 49, 50
Aposteme, 112
Aposteme of the lure, signs of, 11; treatment of, 13
Apostemes, fraudulent, 81
Apostemes, the treatment of inward, 98
Apostemes, venomous, 81
Apostles, ointment of the, 130
Apostolicon, 74, 79, 130
Apothecaries mentioned, 28, 117
Apothecary, Arderne’s recognition of, 117
Appleton, William de, xi
Arabic ointment, 92
Archimathæus of Salerno, 111
Arderne acts like an idiot, 84
Arderne and abdominal massage, 77, 131
Arderne, fees charged by, 6, 111
Arderne land granted to a John Arderne, x, 105
Arderne not a blood-letter, 62
Arderne quotes himself, 26
Arderne, John, a fishmonger, x, note
Arderne, John, de, 107
Arderne, John, lived in Newark, 1
Arderne, John, reasons for treating fistula, 3
Arderne, Master John, biography of, x; date of birth, x; as a surgeon, xiv; operation for fistula, xvii; treatise on the fistula, xv; the works of, xv
Arderne, Richard, a skinner, x, note
Arderne, Sir John, x
Arderne, will of a John, in 1446, 134
Arderne's belief in Astrology, 115
Arderne's clyster pipe, 74
Arderne's experience with arsenic, 83-85
Arderne's knowledge of books, 122
Arderne's knowledge of Galen, 110
Arderne's tapisvalencia ointment, 69
Arderne's treatment of scabies, 111
Arderne's valence of scabious, 97
Arderne's valence of wormode, 98
Argentin, Dr., quotes Arderne, xxx
Arm, a case of swollen, 49
Arm, the liver vein of, 54
Arm, vena hepatica of, 49
Arnitage-Smith, Mr. Sydney, quoted, x, xi, xiv, 108
Arms of Bergerac, 108
Arms of the Everyngham family, 107
Arnold de Villa Nova, quoted, 132
Arrow wounds, 89, 98
Arsenic, 44, 45, 50, 51
Arsenic a dangerous dressing, 83, 85
Arsenic, Arderne's experience with, 83
Arsenic, remedial effects on the tissues, 44, 45
Arsenic, sublimed, 83
Arsenic, varieties of, 82, 132
Astrology, Arderne's belief in, 115
Astrology in surgery, 16, 17
Astronomers quoted, 16, 17
Atramentez, 53, 79, 128
Atreos piles, 56
Attrament, 40, 80
Auripigmentum, or Black ink, 128; or vitriol, 119
Attritos piles, 56
Auripigmentum, 46, 47, 49, 50; 86
Auripigmentum, its relation to arsenic, 82
Auripigmentum, or native arsenic, 121
Auripigmentum, qualities of, 83
Auripigmentum rubrum, 83
Auripigmentum, uses of, 83
Avance, or Herb Benedict, 30, 117
Avicenna, account of, 124
Avicenna quoted, 3, 56, 78
Avicenna, the Canon of, 115
Avicenna, white ointment of, 119
Aysēl, or vinegar, 119

Balaustia, or wild pomegranate, 65, 74, 127
Balne by Snaithe, I; hamlet of, 108
Bandages after fistula operation, 25 for piles, 70
Bandages, list, 25
Bandaging a patient after fistula operation, 25
Bandaging, the advantages of good, 25
Barber, bad treatment by a, 100
Barber, duties of, 60, 125
Barber surgeons, xix
Barbers not to be taught to detriment of Masters in surgery, 71
Barberry, 74
Bark dust, 74
Barley bread soaked, for piles, 63
Barley meal, 27, 41, 66, 92
Barone, Roger de, account of, 123
Bartholomew of Salernum, account of, 123
Bartholomew of Salernum, Maister, quoted, 55, 123
Basilic vein, 126; phlebotomy of, 61, 72
Bath, hot, treatment by, 72
Baw, Roger, quoted, 55, 122
Bdellium, or Myrrh, 67, 128
Bean as a styptic applied locally, 66
Bean meal, 27
Beans, 63
Bedington known to Arderne, xxx
Belleric myrobolans, 126
Bergerac, arms of, 108
Bergerac, town of, 108
Bernard de Gordon quoted, 14, 38, 55, 56 note, 60, 64, 73, 114, 125
Bernard of Gordon, account of, 122
Bible quoted, 7
Index.

Bibliography, xxxiii-xxxv
Black choler, 62
Black Death, 109
Black entrete, 53
Black ointment, its composition, 54
Black pepper, 92
Black pitch plaster, 81
Black poppy, 100, 101
Black Prince, Edward the, xii, xxvii, 2, 3, 130
Black soap, 48, 50, 118
Bladder for clyster, 26
Bladder for enema, its preparation, 75
Blakborne, Sir Henry, 109; cured of fistula, 2
Blanche, wife of John of Gaunt, 107
Bleeding, Arderne’s method of arresting, 116
Bleeding from the basilic vein, 54
Bleeding-iron inferior to a lancet, 61
Bleeding, the influence of the Moon on, 16, 17
Bleeding, the times for, 61
Blood, excess of, a cause of piles, 56
Blood, how purified, 57
Blood-iron, or phlebotome, 61, 70
Blood-letter, a, 62
Blood-letting not undertaken by Arderne, 62
Blood, means of staunching, 24
Blood, medicinal use of human, 132
Blood, the, runs freely, 60
Blood, to staunch, 24, 25, 65, 66
Blood, when to draw maiden’s, 90
Boar’s dung, 66
Boetius, 7, 23, 111
Bole, armoniac, 27, 28, 36, 38, 40, 63, 65, 67
Bole powder, a styptic, 25
Boli, meaning of, 116
Bolus armeniacus, a styptic, 116
Bone, dead, treatment of, 43, 54
Bone, mortification of, 54
Bones, fistula of, evil signs in, 46, 47
Books, Arderne’s knowledge of, 122
Bordeaux, 41, 108
Brain, remedies to comfort, 102
Bran decoction for a clyster, 38, 49, 69, 75, 76, 77
Bran ointment, 88
Bread, barley, for piles, 63
Breast, inflammation of, 12, 52
Briegerac, town of, 1, 108
Brimstone and soap ointment, 44, 46
Briony root, 100; medicinal uses of, 134
Briywell near Tickhill, 2
Broom ashes, 53
Bruised leg, treatment of, 54, 98
Bruising of limbs, 97
Bruno mentioned, 119
Bubo, nature of, 37
Bubo, pun upon the word, 36, 37
Bubo within the lure incurable, 37, 39
Buboes and owls, 36, 37
Burns, treatment of, 91
Bursa pastoris or Shepherd’s Purse, 63, 74, 78, 125
Butter, 30
Buttocks, bandaging of, 25, 26, 70
Buttocks, ulceration of, 39, 41
Bult, meaning of the word, 120
Bust of arm, swelling of, 49
Bust of knee, emposteme in, 47
CALCOTHAR, meaning of the term, 131
Calx vive, 47, 48
Camomile, flowers of, 94
Camomile for a clyster, 75, 76
Camomile, oil of, 12, 26, 88
Camomile, oil of, to prepare, 94
Camphor for piles, 63
Cancer and dysentery differential signs, 37
Cancer of mouth, 86
Cancer of rectum to be distinguished from dysentery, 39
Cancer of the rectum, signs, 38; treatment, 38; incurable, 39
Cancer of the yard, 92
Cancer, treatment by licium, 81, 85
Cancerous ulcers, 81, 86
Canell or cinnamon, 63, 64, 127
Canella, a styptic, 64
Canon, the case of a, 52
Caprifoile, juice of, 44, 81, 85
Carbuncle, the medicinal use of, 128
Carbuncle, treatment of, 52
Carbuncles, 81
Carleton, Nott.s., 107
Carmelites, the church of the, 133
Carmen, contra spasmum et crampe, 102
Carome; friars, 100
Index.

Carp, 49, 50, 51
Cassia fistula, a bridle to opium, 101
Cassia fistula for a clyster, 75
Castile, king of, xi
Castor, its source, 134
Castoreum, 102
Cato quoted, 8
Cauliflora, crop3 of, 73
Cautery as a styptic, 66
Cautery used, 45, 46, 51
Celidone, juice of, 40, 41, 73
Celidone, or the chelidonia majus, 90, 119
Centillegium of Ptolemy, 115
Cereos, 130
Cerebral symptoms in fistula, 14
Ceruse, or carbonate of lead, 11, 27, 65, 113, 117
Chafing of skin, treatment of, 40
Chalcanthum, meaning of the term, 128, 131
Chapped lips, an ointment for, 97
Charm against cramp, 102
Chauliac, Guy de, 55, 122, 123; classification of medical practitioners by, 119; formula for Ungt. Apostolicon, 130; classification of ulcers by, 131; quotes William of Salicet, 125; treatment of fistula by, xvii; use of ink by, 128
Chawelle3, the, 11, 113
Chawylbone, 113
Chessede, or chess-seed, 100, 134
Chesterfield, 103
Children, to cure pustules in the mouths of, 32
Choler, 62
Christmas Day, a man whose leg swelled on, 52
Chronic disease, 21
Chynnynng3 of the lure, 73
Cicatrization of a wound, 27
Cicuta or water hemlock, 101, 134
"Ciliaca passio," 58
Cimbalarie, or pennywort, 130
Cineris geneste, 53
Cinnamon, 68
Cinquefoil for piles, 63
Cipresse, 63
Citonior, oil of, 41
Citrine ointment, 65
Citrine3, 62, 125
Clarence, marriage of Lionel Duke of, xxix, 102, 103

"Clarificatio de vicio splenis,"
Gordon's, quoted, 60
Clay and horse dung as a cement, 80, 96
Clay used as a styptic, 66
Clothing, the manner of a leech's, 6
Clone, William, xiv
Clyffyng, meaning of the word, 127
Clyster, 26; abdominal massage after, 77
Clyster, administration of, needs skill, 76
Clyster, amount to be given, 76
Clyster, components of a simple, 75
Clyster, date of the Treatise on, xii
Clyster, for fistula, 11; formula for, 76
Clyster, how to examine the results of, 77
Clyster, leech to be skilled in administering, 75
Clyster, Lombards skilled in giving, 76
Clyster, method of administering, 76
Clyster, mitigative, 65
Clyster of bran, 38
Clyster pipe, Arderne's form of, 74
Clyster relieves ventosenej, 78
Clysters for piles, 65
Clysters, nutrient, 78
Clysters periodic, 78
Clysters, prognosis from, 77
Clysters, a treatise on, 74–78
Cluttered or clotted blood, 71
Coclear, the shield, xviii, 24, 112
Codde, fistula of, 32
Coddes of the testicles, cure of fistula in, 2
Colace or cabbage, 70, 129
Cold a styptic, 66
Cole3 for piles, 63
Colica passio, a clyster for, 75, 78
Colic may come from tenesmus, 72
Colic relieved by clysters, 76
Colier, John, case of, 32
Colier, John le, 109
Colocynth pulp a cause of tenesmus, 72
Colyar, William, 109
Colyn, John, cured, 2
Comfrey, 74
Comyn, derivation and use of, 128
Concave ulcer, 133
Condyloma, 68; etymology of, 56
Confection of Tapsimel, 31, 40
Confectio sanguinis veneris, 90
Connought, grant of land in, x, 105
Constantinus Africanus, 110, 123
Constellations, influence of, on the body, 16, 17
Constipation a cause of tenesmus, 72
Constipation relieved by clysters, 76
Contents, Table of, xxxvi-xxxvii
Contusions, treatment of, 52
Coprose, or green vitriol, 53, 64, 79, 127
Coral for piles, a styptic, 64
Coral, red, 66, 67; the medicinal use of, 127
Corbeil, Giles of, account of, 124
Corboliensis Agidius, 59, 113; the treatise of, xiii; account of, 124
Coriander for piles, 63
Coriander juice, 74
Corrosive powders, rule for using, 87
Cotton, teased, 25, 67
Covetousness, warning against, 21
Cramp, charm against, 102
Crayfish, 41
Creofeloroson powder, 42, 44, 45, 46
Creofeloroson, powder, not identified, 119
Crete, vitriol is found in the isle of, 17
Crevise, the lobster, 41
Crocus, a bridle to opium, 101
Crocus oil, 68
Crocus, or saffron, 69, 101, 129
Croydon known to Arderne, xxx
Cuckoo's bread, or wood sorrel, 129
Cummin, 97; bad for piles, 63
Cummin, externally a styptic, 67; internally opens veins, 67
Cummin, powder of, 67
Cupping for haemorrhoids, 62
Cupping with scarification, 66
Cure of fistula, 21
Cure, time of, in fistula of fingers, 42
Curses of humours, 42, 93, 94; meaning of the term, 133

Death of patients in autumn or harvest, 38
De disciplina scholarium quoted, 23; 111
De Eardene, x
'De ingenio' of Galen quoted, 82
Dei Gratia, formula for the Ungt., 130
Demetrius, king of Persia, 67, 128
Denny, Hew, fishmonger, cured, 2
Derby, Henry, Earl of, 1, 107, 108
Derlyng, Hugo, cured of fistula, 1
Diabrosi, piles due to, 58
Diachylon plaster, 12; varieties of, 113
Diaflomsmus, confection of, 31, 32, 92; explanation of, 117
Diagredium, a cause of tenesmus, 72; preparation of, 129
Dialthaec, 12
Diaquilon, 12; varieties of, 113
Diarrhoea, 62
Diatritionpipereon, 130
Diet a cause of piles, 57
Diet for fistula, 21
Dilating forceps, Arderne's, 35
Dioscorides, 97; account of, 133
Disease, influence of mind on, 6, 7, 8
Disease, influence of sun and moon upon, 21
Disease, when acute and chronic, 21
Distillation of juniper oil, 96
Dock, red, 68
Dominica oratio, 103
Doves' dung, uses of, 50, 121
Dragant, or tragacanth, 64, 79, 126, 131
Dragagante is different from Dragante, 79
Dragant, 79; the composition of, 126
Dragaunt mucilage for piles, 64, 126
Dragma, a talent, 3
Dressing of wounds not to be too frequent, 87
Dressings after fistula operations, 25
Drink a cause of piles, 59
Dropsy caused by piles, 57
Dropsy, piles a preservative from, 57
Dropsy, treatment of cold, 97
Dung of dove, 50, 121
Dung of horse, 80
Dung of swine, medicinal use of, 128
Dung of wild boar, 66
Duration of the cure of fistula, 29
Dysentery, 37, 62
Dysentery and cancer, differential signs, 37, 39
Dysentery to be distinguished from piles, 55
Dyuelyn ointment, 53, 54
Ears discharging, 81
Ears, ulcers of, 61
Edere terrestris, or ground ivy, 133
Edward, Prince of Wales, mentioned, xxvii, 2, 3
Egg, hard roasted, 69
Egg, raw, as a dressing, 26, 28, 29, 51, 53, 66, 67, 72, 83, 96
Egg, white of, 25, 31, 32, 50, 51, 53
Egg, yolk of, 11, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 33, 36, 38, 40, 54, 65, 72, 83, 96
Eiren, white of, 31, 32, 67
Emeroydes v. haemorrhoids, 55 et seq.
Emplastron api, 51
Emplastron Nerbon, 42, 87
Emplastron sanguiboetes, 43, 44, 45, 47, 51
Emplastron sanguiboetes not identified, 119
Emplastrum diaflosmus, 31, 32
Emplastr. vitriol, 81
Emposteme in bust of knee, 47
Emunctories of the body, 11, 113
Encaustum, or purple ink, 128
Endive for clyster, 72
Enema, 26. See Clyster
Enemata, a treatise on, 74-78
Epistaxis, to arrest, 80
Epithimation, meaning of the term, 121
Epithimation of a wound, 52
Erysipelis, 40
Ethic patients, a help for, 95
Euphorbium bad for piles, 63
Evening the proper time to bleed, 61
Everyngham, Sir Adam, 107; armorial bearings of, 108; cured of fistula, 1
Excoriations of the skin, 36, 40, 43, 90
Experience teaches, 38
Experience, value of, 3
Extractum nigrum, its composition, 53, 54

| Eyes, cure of, 85, 86 |
| Eyes, treatment by licium, 85, 86 |
| Falconers use orpiment, 83 |
| False flewme, 58 |
| Farmacie is medicine, 68 |
| Feathers, burnt, a styptic, 25 |
| Feathers of fowl, burnt, 66 |
| Feeding by the rectum, 78 |
| Fees for an operation, 6 |
| Fees in the fourteenth century, 111 |
| Fees, Mondeville's advice about, xx, xxi, xxi |
| Fees to be paid before an operation, 15 |
| "Felon," meaning of the term, 121 |
| "Felon," treatment of, 52 |
| Fenigreke, 72, 130 |
| Ferris, Richard, xiv |
| Festered gout, 21, 46, 47, 115 |
| Feu sauvage, 4, 27, 41, 91 |
| Fics, 56; the French name for piles, 55 |
| Fics-herbe, 67 |
| Fig, a bloody, 41 |
| Figs, bleeding, in the hand, 92 |
| Figs cured, 92 |
| Figs in the yard, 92 |
| Fik, meaning of the term, 119 |
| Fingers, fistula of, 42 |
| Fire, analogy of the working of, 30 |
| Fire, Persian, or shingles, 133 |
| Fire, St. Anthony's, or ergotinism, 133 |
| Fire, wild, or erysipelas, 41, 91, 133 |
| Fishmonger, treatment of a London, 100 |
| Fistula, blind internal, operation for, 34 |
| Fistula, causes of, 11 |
| Fistula, complete, cure of, by ligature, 34 |
| Fistula, contemporary treatment of, xvi |
| Fistula, cure of, 21 |
| Fistula deemed incurable, xvi, 2, 4 |
| Fistula, definition of, 11, 20 |
| Fistula, dressings for, 25, 27, 34 |
| Fistula, duration of the cure of, 29, 33, 36 |
| Fistula, examination of, 33 |
| Fistula, good signs for operating upon, 21 |
| Fistula, head symptoms in, 14 |
| Fistula in ano, duration of cure, 6 |
Index.

143

Fistulo in ano, the fees for operating upon, 6, 111

Fistula in ano, instruments for, 8, 9, 13

Fistula in ano, prognosis of, 6

Fistula in ano, treatise on, 1-49

Fistula in men, prognosis of, 21

Fistula, influence of diet on, 21

Fistula, length of time for cure, 34

Fistula, method of cutting, 23

Fistula, method of fretting, 29

Fistula, method of placing the patient for operation on, 34

Fistula, mortification of, 35

Fistula neglected by the old surgeons, xvi, 2

Fistula of arm, 20; bone, 47; breast, 20; buttocks, 13; coddes, 2, 32; costes, 20; feet, 20, 21, 46; hands, 20; joints, 20; knees, 20; legs, 20, 21, 47; metacarpal bones, 4, 6; penile, 14; scrotal, 13; thighs, 20; urethra, 14

Fistula operation, dressings for, 25; opening of bowels after, 26, 29

Fistula, sequelae of, 14

Fistula, treatment after operation, 26

Fistula, treatment by cutting, 21

Fistula, treatment by licium, 85

Fistula, treatment by ligature, 29

Fistula, urethral, 21

Fistulae, multiple, treatment of, 32

Fistulae, situation of, 20

Fistulate gout, 21, 27, 46, 47, 115

Flanders known to Arderne, xii, 117

Flanders, name of nightshade in, xii, 32, 117

Flayings of the skin, 36, 40, 43, 90

Flebotome, 47

Flesh, dead or mortified, 44, 46, 54, 83, 87

Fleume, scab of salt, 82

Flosmus in mullein, 31

Flowers of camomile, 94

Flowers of pomegranate, 74

Fomentation, 70

Fools and no true leeches, 87

Fools' treatment of piles, 70

Forceps for dilating anus, 35

Forslong, the distance of a, 76

"For why," the English rendering of Num, 4, 111

Four Masters, account of, 123

Fowl's grease, 12

Frenenum Caesaris, the ligature, xvii, 9, 22, 24, 112

France, a sleeping powder used in, 100

France, pilgrims robbed in, 101

Frankincense, 40

Fraudulent apostemes, 81

Fraudulent ulcers, 79, 86, 131

French name for piles, figs, 55

French soap, 118

Frere Caromey, the White friars or Carmelites, 133

Fretting a fistula, 29, 39; of skin, 64

Friar minorite cures fistula, 3, 110

Friars preachers cured of fistula, 2

Frousingeis, 13; meaning of, 114

Fumitory, juice of, 63

Fumitory, water of, 63

Furfur, or Brann, 70, 129

Furnivall, Dr., quoted, xxix

Galang, or ginger, 68, 129

Galen, Arderne's knowledge of, 110; quoted, 3, 12, 57, 60, 80, 94

Galenic writings known to Arderne, 110

Gall bladder the prison of melancholy, 60

Galls, 63, 65, 67, 74

Galls, powder of, 27

Gariopontus of Salerno, 123

Garlic, 50

Garlic bad for piles, 63

Garse, meaning of the word, 121

Garsing a wound, 52, 55, 63

Gascony, 1, 41

Gascony campaign, Arderne's knowledge of, 108

Gaunt, John of, x, xi, xiii, 107, 108

Gaunt, Blanche, the wife of John of, 10

Gawel or Myrrh, 74

Gedelin, Notts., 107

Geneste, ashes of, 53

Gilbert the Englishman, or Gilbertus Anglicus, 113, 123

Gilbertus, Maister, 73

Gilbertyn, quoted, 11, 55, 113

Giles of Corbeil, account of, 124

Gilles de Corbeil, xiii, 113

Ginger, 68

Glass, powder of, 44, 54

Glass, use of, in wounds, 44
Glister, 26, 27, 29
Glutaeal sinuses, 13
Glysters, a treatise on, 74
Goats' milk, 72; artificial, 72
Goats' milk a good vehicle for myrobalans, 63
Goats' tallow, 73
Good Henry or Chenoopodium, 130
Goose grease, 12
Gordon, Bernard de, 114, 122;
quoted, 59, 60, 61, 64, 83, 125
Gout, a good plaster for, 96
Gout, festered, 21, 115
Gout, fistulate, 21, 46, 47
Gout of the joints, 97
Gout, treatment of, 96, 97
Gray, Sir Reginald de, 2, 102, 109
Gray, Sir Richard, founds a Carme-
lite convent in London, 134
Grease of hens, 72
Great men, licium fails to cure, 86
Great men, treatment of, 25, 86, 89
Great wine, 63
Greek, charm written in letters of,
104
Greek physicians, use of the word
Hæmorrhoids, 55
Greek powder, 41
Green ointment, 54
Gruel for piles, 63
Guido, Master, account of, 123
Guild of Surgeons, xix
Gum arabic, 27
Gum arabic for piles, 64, 67
Gums, inflammation of, 81
Gums, swollen, 81
Gunnas, a family of York, 109
Gunnay, Thomas, 109
Gunnays, John, 109
Gunny, Thomas, cured, 2
Guy de Chauliac, quoted 55, 122;
account of, 123; use of ink by, 128
Gymewez, the, 100; meaning of the
word, 133

"HACKRY-PACKRY," 130
Hæmatites, or lapis omoptoies, 63,
126
Hæmorrhage, means of stopping, 15,
24, 116
Hæmorrhoids, French name for, 55;
Greek name for, 55; Latin name
for, 55; Londoners' name for, 55
Hæmorrhoids, a cause of tenesmus,
72
Hæmorrhoids, a treatise on, 55
Hæmorrhoids, attritos, 56
Hæmorrhoids, causes of, 56
Hæmorrhoids, condition of the
urine in, 55
Hæmorrhoids, condylomatous, 56
Hæmorrhoids, danger signals in, 56
Hæmorrhoids, deaf, 56
Hæmorrhoids, definition of, 57
Hæmorrhoids, diet in, 63
Hæmorrhoids, dietetic causes of, 57
Hæmorrhoids, diseases caused by, 57
Hæmorrhoids, diseases prevented
by, 57
Hæmorrhoids, distinguishable from
dysentery, 58
Hæmorrhoids, distinguishable from
passio iliaca, 58
Hæmorrhoids, drink a cause of, 59
Hæmorrhoids, due to anathemasy, 55
Hæmorrhoids, due to diabrosis, 55
Hæmorrhoids, due to melancholy,
signs of, 60
Hæmorrhoids, due to rixi, 58
Hæmorrhoids, etymology of, 55
Hæmorrhoids, excess of blood a
cause of, 56
Hæmorrhoids, means of stopping, 15,
24
Hæmorrhoids, melancholy, a cause of,
56
Hæmorrhoids, morale, 56
Hæmorrhoids, mulberry, 56
Hæmorrhoids, ointment for, 91
Hæmorrhoids, operation upon
thrombosed, 70
Hæmorrhoids, phlebotomy in, 61
Hæmorrhoids, plethora a cause of,
56
Hæmorrhoids, prevented by phle-
botomy, 62
Hæmorrhoids, produced by bleeding
from internal saphenous vein, 61
Hæmorrhoids, purgation re-
commended in, 64
Hæmorrhoids, purgatives a cause of,
57
Hæmorrhoids, purgatives in, 62
Hæmorrhoids, purse-like, 71
Hæmorrhoids, remedies for, 63
Hæmorrhoids, restrained by bleeding
from external saphenous vein, 61
Hæmorrhoids, scammony and aloes
harmful in, 63
Hæmorrhoids, signs of, 56
Index.

Hæmorrhoids, soothing clyster for, 65
Hæmorrhoids, symptoms of, 57
Hæmorrhoids, treatment by clysters, 64, 65
Hæmorrhoids, treated by cupping, 62
Hæmorrhoids, treatment by rubbing, 60, 65
Hæmorrhoids, treatment by sweating, 63
Hæmorrhoids, treatment in delicate folk, 64
Hæmorrhoids, treatment in the luxurious, 60
Hæmorrhoids, treatment in strong men, 64, 95
Hæmorrhoids, treatment of, by fools, 70
Hæmorrhoids, treatment of inflamed, 69, 70
Hæmorrhoids, uses of, 57
Hæmorrhoids, or uve, 56
Hæmorrhoids, varieties of, 56
Hæmorrhoids, varucales, 56
Hæmorrhoids, when excessive, 158
Hæmorrhoids, when temperate in amount, 58
Hairs of hare as a styptic, 62, 66
Halleluiah, or wood sorrel, 68, 129
Halcy, 16, 17, 115
Hameldon, Sir Thomas, cured, 2
Hand, figs of, cured, 92
Hare's hairs burnt, 25, 66, 67; not burnt, 25, 67
Hartshorn, 74
Headache, cure for, 41
Headache, symptoms in fistula, 14
Headache, treatment of, 94
Heat, a styptic, 66
Hedera terrestris, sometimes the Yew, 90, 133
Henry IV cured of prolapse, xii, 74, 130
Henry, Earl of Derby, death of, 107, 108
Henry, Good, or chenopodium, 130
Hen's feathers, burnt, a styptic, 25, 66
Hen's grease, 72
Herb pede Lyon, 48, 120
Herb Robert or geranium robertianum, 121
Hermodactyle powder, 81, 131
Hierà pigre, explanation of the term, 130

ARDERNE.

Hig (Hag) taper, 117
Hippocrates quoted, 21, 57, 70; Arderne's knowledge of, 115
Hippocratic writings known to Arderne, 110
Hog, lard of, 96
Holle, John of, cured, 2
Hollow ulcers, 89
Homily quoted, 7
Honey, 44, 48, 49, 50, 65, 73, 75, 76, 77, 81, 85, 92, 97
Honey cotted with vinegar, 65
Honey of Mullein, xxxii
Honey scomed, 30, 31, 40, 65, 73
Honey, use of, in wounds, 44
Horse dung, 80
Horse-kicks, injuries from, 52, 54
Horsemint, 74
Human powder, its composition, 132
Humours, causes of, 93, 94
Humours, the varieties of, 125
Huntingdon, 102
Hyoscyamus, 100, 101
Hypoquistidos for piles, 63

IDIOT, Arderne acts like an, 84
Idiot surgeons, 133
Iera pigra, 130
Iliaca passio to be distinguished from piles, 58
Iliac passion, meaning of, 129
Iliac passion the result of tenesmus, 72
Iliac passion, signs of, 59
Impatience of patients commented on, 55
Incurable wounds, treatment of, 96
Indi melancholy, 62
Indi myrobalans, 126
Inflammation a cause of tenesmus, 72
Ink of Lombards, 67
Ink, varieties of, 128
Intercutaneous collections, cure of, 97
Isaac the Jew, 110
Isagoge Johannitii, 123
Itch, treatment of, by Arderne, 111
Itching, cure of, 40

JACEA ALBA is scabious, 98
Jacea nigra is matfelon, 98
Jamarcius, Maister, quoted, 55
Jamarcius, account of, 123
Jamerius, quoted, 118; account of, 123

L
Jamerius' human powder, 132
Jasper, red, medicinal use of, 66, 127
Johannice, account of, 123
Johannitius, the 'Isagoge' of, 110; account of, 123
Joints, gout of, 97
Joints of fingers, fistula of, 42
Joyntour of the fingers, fistulae of, 46
Juice of apium, 50, 72
Juice of caprifoile, its uses, 81, 85
Juice of celidon, 73
Juice of coriander, 74
Juice of livane, 73
Juice of marigold, 52
Juice of Mercury, 93
Juice of mullein, 64, 67
Juice of nettle a styptic, 66
Juice of nettle, the medicinal use of
Juice of orpyne, 67
Juice of plantayne for piles, 64
Juice of porres (leeks), 45, 67
Juice of rhubarb, 64
Juice of scabious, 97
Juice of solsequium, 52
Juice of walwort, uses of, 97
Juice of woodbine, 44
Juniper ointment, 96
Jusquiamus, juice of, 100, 101; seed, 100; treacle, 102
Jusquiamus, or Henbane, 134
Kanva3 or Canvas, 92
Kebulij fleume, 62
Kebulij myrobalans, 126
Kilyu3 vein, its anatomy, 57
Knee, emposteme in the b3t of, 47
Knees, fistula of, 46
Knife wound, to stop bleeding from, 66
Knife wounds, 89, 98, 100
Kynnyng, meaning of the word, 127
Lache knot, 29
Ladanum, 63
Ladies' name for Pulvis sanguinis veneris, 89
Ladies, the leech not to meddle with, 5
Lady, patient treated by, 44, 119
Lady treats a case of swollen arm 49
Laici, 103
Lameleye, Rich de, 107
Lampadidnawe in Wales, 107
Lana succida, 12, 67, 113, 114
Lancaster, Duke of, xi, xiii, xiv, 1
Lanceola, description of, 116
Lancet, 13, 15, 24, 32, 70, 71, 125
Lancet and Razor, difference between, 115
Lancet preferable to a bleeding-iron, 61
Lanfrank, treatment of fistula by, xvi; ideal surgeon, xxv; quoted, 54, 55, 56, 57, 119; account of, 122
Laon, king of, xi
Lapis omoptoes for piles, 63, 126
Lard, 34, 45, 48, 50, 51, 54, 69, 77, 84, 97, 98, 99, 101
Lard, shavings of, 51
Lard, skin of, 47, 69, 97, 98
Lard tents, 48
Latin use of the term hæmor rhoids, 55
Leech, a witty, 28, 30
Leech, breath of, hurtful to wounds after eating garlic and onions, 88; or commerce with menstruating women, 88
Leech, intelligence of, 23, 28
Leech should beware of arsenic, 83, 85
Leech, the fellow of the, 22, 112
Leech, the qualities required by Arderne in, 4-8
Leech, the temptations of, 21
Leech to be skilled in giving enemat, 75
Leech to think for himself, 23, 34, 115
Leech, uncunning, 37, 38, 42, 86
Leeks a styptic, 67
Leeks bad for piles, 63
Legs, a case for fistula of, 46, 47
Lender, the, 34, 56
Leonellus filius regis Angliae, 102
Lepra, 95
Leprosy, piles a preventive from, 57
Lettuce, 101
Lexington, John de, 107
Lice on falcons, to destroy, 83
Licium, 81, 84, 85, 97
Licium fails to cure a great man, 86
Licium, preparation of, 44
Licium, use of, in wounds, 44, 46, 84, 85
Linctery, 62
Index.

Ligature, treatment of fistula by, 29
Ligatures, leech to a keep a stock of, 30
Lilium medicae quoted, 38, 55
Lily oil, 12
Lily root, 63
Limbs, bruises of, 97
Lincoln, 102
Linseed oil, 28
Lionel Duke of Clarence, 103; marriage of, xxxix
Liquorice a good vehicle for myrobolans, 62
List bandages, 25, 26
Litharge, 11
Litharge of gold, 27
Litharge of silver, 27
Litharge, powder of, 54
Lithargyrum, varieties of, 117
Lithuanian crusade, 114, 128
Liver, action of, on the bowels, 78
Liver pain, 95
Liver vein of the arm, 54
Lobster, 41
Lombards skilled in clysters, 76
London, 102
London, men of, call haemorrhoids piles, 55
Longanon, meaning of the word, 109
Longaon, 13, 14, 22, 32, 78
Longaon, chynnyngs of, 71
Longaon, to replace, 74
Louis XIV of France cured of fistula, 111
Lumberdick ink, 67
Lunae, Nota de cognitione signorum, 16
Lupus, the urine in, 60
Lupus, treatment by licium, 85
Lure, xii, 13, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 29, 30, 31, 33, 35, 38, 39, 40, 56, 58, 61, 64, 65, 67, 69, 70, 71, 72, 73, 74, 77
Lure, against the going out of, 74
Lure, apostempe of, treatment for, 13
Lure, arrest of bleeding from, 80
Lure, bubo within, 37
Lure, cancer of, 86
Lure, flux of blood in, 55
Lure, inflammation of the, 11
Lure, itching of, 73
Lure, meaning of the word, 109
Lutum sapienciæ, the preparation of, 131
Lyvane juice, 73
M, meaning of the symbol, 113
McCaw, Col., quoted, xi, xii, xxxii
Macrobins quoted, 97, 133
Mallard grease, 12
Mallow, 49
Mallow and swine's grease, plaster of, 11
Mallow leaves, 68
Mallow, varieties of, 113
Mallows, an ointment of tame, 12
Mallows for a clyster, 75
Mammary abscess, a plaster for, 12
Mammary abscess, treatment of, 52
Mammary inflammation, a plaster for, 12
Mandrageora, 101
Mania, piles a preservative from, 57
Manipulus, 12, 113
Manny, Sir Walter de, 108
Mantua, 103
Marice, 80, 85, 86
Marice, arrest of bleeding from, 80
Marice, cancer of, 86
Marice, canker of, treated by licium, 85
Marice, meaning of, 113
Marigold, juice of, 52
Marigold, or Calendula officinalis, 121
Massage after a clyster, 77
Massage for chronic constipation, 131
Masters in surgery superior to Barbers, xviii, xix, 71
Masters, the Four, account of, 123
Mastic, 63, 65, 67
Mastic oil, to prepare, 95
Masty, Sir John, 109
Matfelon is jacea nigra, 98
Mayor of Northampton, case of, 32
Meal, barley, 41, 66
Meal, barley, 72, 129
Meal, rye, 50
Meal, wheat, 48
Medicine, epochs in, ix
Medicines not to be unduly complex, 27
Medicines to be adapted to the patient, 25
Mediolani, 102
Medlars for piles, 63
Index.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>148</td>
<td>Index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107</td>
<td>Megatechni, 110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>Mekisburg, Will de, 107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>Melancholy, a cause of piles, 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>Melancholy confined in the gall bladder, 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>Melancholy, indi, 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>Melancholy, its cause, 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>Melancholy, signs of, 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>Melane, 102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81</td>
<td>Melilote, 28, 81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>Mene, 'meaning of, 108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Mene, our Lord being, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>Menorrhagia, purgatives in, 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>Menorrhagia, treatment of, 63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>Menstruating women harmful to wounds, 88, 132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>Menstruation provoked by bleeding from internal saphenous vein, 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>Menstruation restrained by bleeding from the external saphenous vein, 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Merch, juice of, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>93</td>
<td>Mercurialis, juice of, 93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76</td>
<td>Mercurialis, or Good Henry, 76, 130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>Mercury, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78</td>
<td>Mesaraic veins, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113</td>
<td>Mesue, the plaster of, 113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>Metacarpal bones, fistulae of, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>Micrology, Master Richard's, quoted, 55, 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>Microtechni, 110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>Milk, a good vehicle for myrobalans, 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td>Milk, artificial goat's, 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>Milk, goat's, a good vehicle for myrobalans, 63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td>Milk, goat's, as a clyster, 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>Milk, sour, for piles, 63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125</td>
<td>Millefoile, or the Yarrow, 63, 125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115</td>
<td>Milne, Dr. Stewart, quoted, 115, 120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>Mind, the effect of, on the body, 6, 7, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>Minorite's cure for fistula, 3, 110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>Mint, 63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxix</td>
<td>Mirfield, John, xxix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125</td>
<td>Mirobalans, a good purgative, 62, 125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
<td>Mirobalans, for a clyster, 75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>Mirtelle, or garden bramble, 63, 102, 135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Molayne, or Verbascum Thapsus, 30, 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130</td>
<td>Mondeville, Henri de, treatment of fistula by, xvii, xix; the ideal surgeon of, xx; formula for Ungt. Apostolicon, 130; on a hollow ulcer, 133; opinion of realgar, 132; on Propoleos, 134; use of ink by, 128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>109</td>
<td>Montford, John de, 109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>Montpellier, medical requirements at the University of, 110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Moon, directions to find the house of, 16, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Moon, influence of, on the body, 16, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Moon, tables to find the house of, 16, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxix</td>
<td>Moore, Dr. Norman, quoted, xxix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>Morales, piles, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124</td>
<td>Morfe, 57, 83, 95, 124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121</td>
<td>Mormale, meaning of, 121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>Mormale, piles a preservative from, 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>Mormale, treatment of, 53, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124</td>
<td>Morphew, meaning of the term, 124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83</td>
<td>Morphoea, 83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>Morphoea, piles a preservative from, 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiv</td>
<td>Morstede, Thomas, xiv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>Mortification of fistula, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86</td>
<td>Mouth, cancer of, 86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85</td>
<td>Mouth, cancer of, treatment by licium, 85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>Mucilage of dragaunt for piles, 64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>Mucilage of gum-arabick for piles, 64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>126</td>
<td>Mucilage of tragacanth, 126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>117</td>
<td>Mugwort or artemisia, 30, 49, 50, 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>Mulberry piles, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxxii</td>
<td>Mullein, honey of, xxxii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73</td>
<td>Mullein, juice of, 30, 64, 67, 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xxxi</td>
<td>Mullein, powers of, xxxi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Mummy, the various forms of, in medicinal use, 65, 67, 74, 127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td>Mundification of a wound, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73</td>
<td>Mutton fat, 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>135</td>
<td>Myristica, 102, 135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>Myrrh, 27, 63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>135</td>
<td>Myrtle for piles, 63, 102, 135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xii</td>
<td>Naghtstach, xii, 32</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index. 149

Nail, dead, treatment of, 43, 44, 45
Names of no value, 83
Narbonne plaster, 42, 91
Narbonne, pun upon, 108
Narbonne, town of, 1
Narrow (streit) wounds, treatment of, 98
Nasar, xxvii, 26, 27, 29, 35, 36, 65, 67
Nasar, meaning of, 113
Nasar of tree, 11, 26, 27, 29, 30, 67
Neat's bladder, preparation of, for an enema, 75
Neck, the source of all spasmodic diseases, 103
Need hath no law, 62,
Needle, the snouted, 9, 15, 24
Neirbon, a pun upon, 91
Neirbon, town of, 1
Nenufare, 102, 135
Nerbon plaster, 42, 91
Nettle, 50
Nettle juice, a styptic, 66
Nettle, juice of red, 66, 79
Nettle juice, the medicinal use of, 128
Nettle tops, 66
Newark, 41
Newark, Arderne lived in, 1
Nicaise, Prof. E., ix
Nitre, 53
Noli-me-tangere, meaning of the term, 125
Noli-me-tangere, the urine in, 60
Noli-me-tangere, treatment by licium, 85
Northampton, the Mayor of, cured, 2, 32
Northamptonshire, a patient from, with rectal cancer, 39
Nose, arrest of bleeding from, 50
Nose-bleeding, to stop, 66
Nottingham, a case of, 100
Nottingham, the Mayor of, 109
Nutrient enemata, 78
Nux moschata, or nutmeg, 102, 135

Oak bark, 74
Oculus lucidus, 85
Oil of almonds, to prepare, 95
Oil of camomile, to prepare, 26, 88, 94
Oil of crocus, 65
Oil of juniper, to prepare, 96

Oil of mastic, to prepare, 95
Oil of roses, 26, 73, 92, 93
Oil of rue, 76.
Oil of violets, 36, 67, 68, 69, 73, 93, 100
Oil roset, an infusion of, 11
Oil roset, its properties, 26, 93
Ointment of mallows, 12
Ointment for sleep, 101
Ointment for spots on skin, 50
Ointment of soap and brimstone, 44, 46, 50
Ointments, a method of melting, 90
Old men, a help to, 95
Oleum seriacum, preparation of, 91
Ol. olivae, 26
Ol. roset, 11, 113
Olibanum or frankincense, 65, 127
Olivai, 65
Olive oil, 12, 26
Onions, bad for piles, 63
Operation, fees for, xx, xxii, xxiii, 6, 15, 111
Operation for fistula, 22
Operations, an ointment to produce anaesthesia during, 101
Opium, 69
Opium, bridled by crocus, 101
Opium, miconis, 101
Opium, thebaic, 101
Opium, the varieties of, 134
Oratio Dominica, 103
Orpiment used by falconers, 83
Orpine, meaning of the word, 128
Orpiment, 73
Orpyne, juice of, 67
Ointment, a name for arsenic, 83
Ostrich feather, the Prince of Wales', xxvii, 130
Oumfray, Adam, cured of fistula, 2
Owles and buboes, 27
Oyster shell for melting ointments, 27, 30, 70, 90

P, meaning of the symbol, 113
Panis ceci, 67
Pantechni, 110
Pantegni, 110
Pap, children's, 72
Papaver albus, 101
Papaver niger, 100
Paralysis, treatment of, 96
Parvencis, or the periwinkle, 125
Passenham, the seneschal of, x
Passio iliaca, a clyster for, 75, 78
Passio iliaca may come from tenesmus, 72; meaning of, 129
Passio iliaca, signs of, 59
Passio iliaca to be distinguished from piles, 58
Passionarius Galeni, the authorship of, 123
Passionary of Bartholomew of Salerno, quoted, 55
Passions of the spleen, piles a preservative from, 57
Paternoster, 91, 103
Patient, addresses to, 22
Patients are now inpatient, 58
Payne, Dr. J. F., quoted, xxxii, 113, 130
Pears for piles, 63
Pede Lyon, or lion's leaf, 48, 120
Pellitory, 130
Penile fistula, 14
Penny used as a measure, 54; as a weight, 64
Perineal fistula, 13
Periodic clysters, 78
Peritory, 74, 76
Perseverance, value of, 3
Persia, king of, cured, 67, 128
Persian fire, or shingles, 133
Pestilence carbuncles, 81
Pestilence, the first, 1, 107
Pestilence, the second, 41, 119
Petite consoude, or the daisy, 30, 117
Petty morel, 31
Peyters, town of, 1; sack of, 108
Pilebotome, 125
Phlebotomy, after treatment of, 61
Phlebotomy and astrology, 16, 17
Phlebotomy at heel, 61
Phlebotomy a preventive of piles, 62
Phlebotomy, infrequent, a cause of piles, 57
Phlebotomy in piles, 60
Phlebotomy of vena salvatella, 61
Phlebotomy, periodic, 61
Phlebotomy, the hour for, 61
Phlegm, false, 58
Phthisis caused by piles, 57
Pictagoras, 16, 17, 115
Piles, a general name for rectal inflammation, 55
Piles, operation on thrombosed, 70
Piles symptoms of, 57
Pilgrims robbed in France, 101

Pills to provoke sleep, 101
Piper niger, 92
Piskre, 114
Pitch plaster, 81
Plague blotches, 81
Plantagenet, Henry, xiii
Plantain for piles, 40, 63, 74
Plantain, juice of, 63
Plantain water, 63, 74
Plaster, good for the gout, 96
Plaster of mallow and swine's grease, 11
Plaster of Paris, auripigmentum compared to, 82
Platearius, quoted, 79; account of the family of, 131
Pleurisy, piles a preservative from, 57
Pliny, quoted, 97; account of, 133
Ploge, 1, 107
Poitiers, town of, 1; sack of, 108
Polypus of nose, 79
Pomegranate flowers, 74
Poppilion, 69, 76, 129
Poptileal space contains only fat, 48
Poppy, black, 100, 101; white, 101
Populeon, or Aspen ointment, 129
Populi, pulv. salus, 90
Porcelane for piles, 63
Porcelain, or purslane, 74, 126
Porres, juice of, 45
Porret, meaning of the word, 120
Porreg or leeks, juice of, 67
Porriss, 45, 50, 74
Pott, Percivall, xiv
Pouder san; pere, 26, 86
Powder of litharge, 54
Powder of walnut, 97
Powder of white glass, 44, 54
Prayer, the Lord's, 91, 103
Prayers used as a measure of time, xxxix, 91, 133
Probe, xvii
Prognosis, advantages of, 38
Prognosis from amount of discharge in fistula, 36
Prognosis from bleeding piles, 59
Prognosis of fistula in ano, 6, 15, 21
Prognosis of fistula in fingers and toes, 42, 47
Prognosis, reasons for assigning too long a time, 6
Prolapse, King Henry IV cured of, xii, 74
Index.

Prolapse of anus, xii, 74
Prolapse of rectum, 74
Propoleos, or bee bread, 101, 134
Proud flesh, 44, 46, 51, 79, 80
Pruritus ani, 73
Psidie, or pomegranate, 27, 65, 74, 67, 117, 127
Psillium, 74
Ptholometis, or Ptolemy, the Physician, 16, 17, 115
Ptisik patients, a help for, 95
Pugillus, 113
Pulv. alkanet, 90
Pulv. alum, 67
Pulv. alkanet succin combust, 27
Pulv. arsenic, 85
Pulv. corrosiv. Pulvis
Pulv. creoferoboron, 42, 44, 45, 46, 51
Pulv. creoferoboron not identified, 119
Pulv. cummin, 67
Pulv. Diatriitonpipereon, 130
Pulv. grecus, preparation of, 41, 92
Pulv. hermodactilez, perhaps colchicum, 81, 131
Pulv. humanus, its composition, 132
Pulv. incarnateye, 53
Pulv. litharg., 54
Pulvis sanguis veneris, receipts for, 89
Pulvis sine pari, 26, 28, 32, 34, 36, 64, 65, 86, 87
Pulvis sine pari failed once, 89
Pulv. salis populi, 37, 40, 90
Pulv. trisantalorum, 74, 130
Pulv. vitriol: combust, 79
Fun on the word Neirbon, 91
Puns by Arderne, 118
Purgatives a cause of piles, 57
Purgatives a cause of tenesmus, 72
Purgatives for piles, 62, 64
Puschez, treatment of, 52, 90, 91
Pustules cured by licium, 86
Pustules of skin, 50
Pustules, treatment of, 50, 51
Putrid flesh destroyed by salus populi, 37, 42
Puttenham, Sir Roger de, 109
Pythagoras, 16, 17, 115

Quartan ague, piles a preservative from, 57
Quicklime, 64, 92

Quicksilver, 40, 53
Quid pro quo, 27, 51, 65, 69, 72
Quinces for piles, 63
Quinque-nervia, or Ribwort, for piles, 63, 126

Ragadiez, meaning of, 13, 114
Rain water, 63, 74
Raisins a good vehicle for myrobalsans, 62
Raisins, preparation of, for a laxative, 62
Ranula, 81
Razor, 15, 24, 32, 43, 47, 49, 71
Razor and lancet, difference between, 115
Realgar, 82, 83, 132
Rectal examination, importance of, 39
Rectal feeding advocated by Arderne, 78, 131
Rectal ulceration, 37-38
Reddcleve-on-Soar, church of, 109
Rerepigre, explanation of the word, 130
Rerepigre for a clyster, 75
Rhegades, a cause of tenesmus, 13, 36, 73
Rhazes, account of, 16, 17, 115
Rhazes, the antidotary of, 100
Rhazes, the plaster of, 113
Rhazes, white ointment of, 119
Rheum, what it is, 48
Rhubarb, juice of, 40, 64, 68
Ribald's potion, composition of, 110, 134
Ribalds and Trowsans in France, 100
Ribwort for piles, 63
Richard Anglicus, account of, 11, 113, 123
Richard, Maister, quoted, 55, 73
Richmond, the honour of, 108
Rigbone, meaning of, 115
Rigbone, nerves of, 70
Rigbone, the, 22, 34, 62, 70
Rixi, piles due to, 58
Rige, or Rue, 63
Roger de Barone, or Varone, account of, 123
Roger, Master, account of, 119, 123
Rogerina, account of, 123
Roland, Maister, of Parma, quoted, 55; account of, 119, 123
Rose oil, 26, 73
Rose, red, 74
Index.

Rose water, 28, 63
Roses, oil of, preparation, 12, 92, 93
Roset water, 65
Rasis, or Rhazes, account of, 115
Ruby, the medicinal use of, 66
Running water, 74
Ruprecht, Knecht, 121
Ruptorye ointment, 14, 33
Ruptorye ointment, formula for, 118
Rye meal, 50, 51

Salerni, regimen sanitatis, quoted, 119
Salerno, Gariopontus of, 123
Salerno, position of medical women at, 119
Salerno, the regimen, quoted, 119
Salernum, Archimatheus of, 111
Salernum, Bartholomew of, 123; formula for an Ungt. Apostolicou, 130
Salicet, William de, ideal surgeon of, xxiv; quoted, 119, 121, 125; treatment of fistula, xvi; use of ink by, 128, 133
Sal nitri, 53
Salt, 49, 50
Salt and water a good clyster, 76
Salus populi ointment, 27, 28, 30, 90
Salus populi, uses of, 37, 40
Salvatella vein, explanation of, 121
Sanguiboetes plaster, 43, 44, 45, 47
Sanguiboetes plaster not identified, 119
Sanguinis veneris confectio, 90; pulv., 89
Sanguis draconis, a styptic, 25, 27, 28, 38, 63, 65, 66, 116
Sanguis veneris, xxix, 26, 28, 33, 34, 35, 36, 76, 84, 87, 89, 90, 132
Sank damours is pulv. sang. veneris, 89
Sank de pucell. is pulv. sang. veneris, 89
Santalum for piles, 63
Saphena vein, bleeding from, 55
Saphena vein, inner, phlebotomy of, 61
Saphena vein, outer, phlebotomy of, 61
Saphena veins, anatomy of, 61
Sapphire, the medicinal use of, 127
Saracenec soap, 118
Sarcocolla, 27; explanation of, 117

Savoy palace burnt, xi
Seab, the, 81, 82, 83
Scabies, treatment of, by Arderne, 111
Scabious is jacea alba, 98
Scabious, juice of, 98
Scabious, powers of, xxxi
Scabious, valence of, to prepare, 97
Scabious with a heavenly flower, 98
Scammony, a cause of tenesmus, 63, 72
Scammony bad for piles, 63
Scarification for piles, 62
Scarification, or garsing, 52, 55
Scarifying a wound, 52, 55
Scariola, or chicory, 129
Scariole for clyster, 72
Scarth of pot, or potsherd, 82
Scheffeld, John, cured of fistula, 2
Scoomed honey, 30, 40, 65, 73
Scoope, Archdeacon of Richmond, Yorkshire, 114
Scoope, Lord, 114
Scoope, Master Giffray, 14
Scoope, Sir Geoffrey, 114
Scoope, Sir Henry le, 114
Scoope, Stephen, 114
Scrotal sinuses, 13
Secrecy enjoined on leech lest barbers learn, 71
Secrecy inculcated, 8, 15, 29, 30, 71, 103, 114
Secrets to be kept, 8
Sengrene is rhubarb, 64
“Sequere me,” the probe, xvii, 8, 15, 22, 33, 112
Sequestrum, Arderne removes a, 85
Serapion, also known as John Damascene, 124
Serapion, the younger, 113
Sharp, Samuel, x
Shears, 26, 87, 92
Sheep’s tallow, 49, 73
Sheffield, John, 2, 108
Shelforde by Nottingham, the priest of, cured, 2
Shins, treatment of injuries to, 88, 98
Shirland, near Chesterfield, 2
Shirland, Sir Reginald Grey of, 109
Shooters’ Hill known to Arderne, xxx

Signs of danger in bleeding piles, 56
Silence, the value of, 6, 8
Silk, white, leech to keep a stock of, 30
Simple men, God reveals things to
the, 2
Siriacum oleum, 91
Siringa, the syringe, 9, 112
Skin, an ointment for spots on, 50
Skin, flayings and excoriations of,
36, 40, 43, 46, 51, 90
Sklyse, a, 31
Sleep, a powder to produce, 100
Sleep, ointment and pills to provoke,
101
Sleep, to awaken a man from, 101,
102
Slip knot, 29
Smalach, juice of, 30
Smalach, or parsley, 49, 117
Snail, black, 53
Snaith, 1; priory of, 108
Sneezeing of menstruous woman
hurtful to wounds, 88
Snouted needle, 9, 15, 24
Soap and brimstone ointment, 44, 46
Soap and sulphur ointment, 46, 50
Soap, black and white, 76, 118
Solsequium, or endive, juice of, 52,
121
Sour milk for piles, 63
Spain, king of, xi
Spargue, or caputasia minor, 30, 117
Spasim, charm against, 102
Spatome, or spatula, 31, 40, 48, 69,
'92, 93, 96
Spleen, diseases of, 60
Spleen pain, 95
Spleen, piles a preservative from the
passions of the, 57
Spleen, the prison of melancholy, 60
Spodin for piles, 63
Sponge used for staunching blood,
24, 25, 32, 70
Sponges, 15, 24
Spoon, the cochlear, 24
Sprains, treatment of, 94, 97
Squibula, 38, 76, 77, 78
St. Anthony's fire, or ergotinism,
133
Sternutories, 102
Stick, injuries from, 54
Stoke Bardolf, Notts., 107
Stomach, abominaciones of, 95, 133
Stomach ache, 95
Stomach, remedies to comfort, 95
Stomach, the urine in diseases of, 60
Stones, injuries from, 52, 54
Stopporte in Cheshire, 109
Storax, 63, 126
Strains, treatment of, 94, 97
Stupes, 25, 26, 28, 32, 44, 49, 67, 87,
100
Styptic herbs, 63
Styptic powder, 41
Styptics, Arderne's use of, 116
Styptics for blood, 15, 24, 25, 41,
65, 66, 74
Succes api, 50
Suffumigation, 74
Sugar, 58
Sulphur, 40, 46, 48
Sulphur and soap ointment, 46, 50
Sulphur water, 82
Sumak for piles, 63, 67
Sun, influence of, on disease, 21
Sunburn, treatment of, 95
Superfluous flesh, 79, 80
Surgeon, the ideal, xix
Surgeon, the qualities required in,
by Arderne, 4
Surgeons, dangers incurred by, xxvii
Surgeons, the Master, xviii
Sweating a treatment for piles, 63
Swine's bladder, preparation of, for
an enema, 75
Swine's dung, medicinal use of, 128
Swine's grease and mallow plaster,
11
Swooning a result of tenesmus, 72
Swooning of a patient after opera-
tion, and treatment of, 32, 33
Sword wounds, treatment of, 52
Swayne's grease, 68, 69
Syringe, use of, 33, 34, 95
Syryng, 33, 34, 95
TALLOTT, 49, 90
Tallow of goats, 73; hart, 90; pig,
97; sheep, 73, 90, 92
Tame mallows, 12
Tanny powder, 27
Tansy, 74
Tapsibarbastus and mel com-
poundt, 73
Tapsimel, xxxii, 35, 36, 40, 65, 92,
117
Tapsimel, preparation of, 23, 31
Tapsivalencia, preparation of, xxxi,
60
TarTAR, 46
TarTAR of ale, 49
Tartar water, receipt for, 52
Index.

Techni of Hippocrates, 110
Teeth, a remedy for disease of, 81
Tenasmon, 39, 56, 71
Tenasmon, prognosis of, 72
Tenasmon, signs of, 71
Tenasmon, treatment of, 72
Tendiculum, the dilator, xvii, 9, 15, 23, 24, 112
Tenesmus, see Tenasmon, 71
Tent, use of, for draining wounds, 32
Tent, wooden, 48
Tents, 34, 48, 100
Tents of lard, 48
Tents of linen, 32
Tents, to anchor, 34
Terebentyne, 31
Terra sigillata, or Lemnos earth, 27, 117
Testicles, cure of fistula in, 2
Testicles, means of cooling, 66
Testudo nigra, 53
Tetter, the, 83
Theodoric, 113, 119
Theriaca hyoscymami, 102
Thread, leech to keep a stock of, 30
Thread, the fourfold, 23
Thrombosed piles, 71
Trough, treatment of, 32
Thumbs, fistulae of, 42
Thus albus, 63, 95
Tickhill, near Bristwell, 2, 108
Time measured by recitation of prayers, xxix, 91
Tinder, a styptic, 25, 66
Toad, skin coloured like that of a, 49
Tongs, Arderne’s dilating, 35
Toulouse, 1; capture of, 108
Towell, 2; the meaning of the word, 109
Treacle of castoreum, 102
Treacle of hyoscyamus, 102
Trisantolorum, or confection of sandal, 130
Trochistes, a plaster made into, 91
Trows and ribalds in France, 100
Truant, meaning of the word, 134
Turecliffe de Warwick, x
Turpentine, 31, 37
Tuxford in the Clay, 1, 107
Twelve Apostles, ointment of the, 130

Ulcera.tion, chronic, of leg, a case of, 53
Ulcera.tion of rectum, 37, 38
Ulcers, cancerous, 81, 86
Ulcers, fraudulent, 79
Ulcers not all buboes, 36
Ulcers not to be dressed too often, 87
Ulcus concavum, 133
Ulcus undesiccable, 13, 114
Unguentum Egyptiacum, 119
Unguentum album, 28, 40, 47, 54, 119
Unguentum Apostolicum, 130
Unguentum Apostolorum, formula for, 130
Unguentum arabicum, 28, 35, 71, 92
Unguentum citrinum, 65
Unguentum dyuelyn, 53, 54
Unguentum fuscum, 50
Unguentum Gratia Dei, 130
Unguentum licium, 44
Unguentum Neyrbone, 33, 34
Unguentum nigrum, its composition and preparation of, 54
Unguentum ruptorium, 14, 33, 118
Unguentum sambuci, 114
Unguentum tapsivalentium, 69
Unguentum Veneris, 130
Unguentum vetus, 74
Unguentum viride, 27, 43, 44, 46, 54, 119
Unguentum viride græci, 53
Universities, approximate dates of, ix
Unkunnyng leeches, 37, 38, 42, 86
Uuntholefulness of patients, comment on, 58
Urethral fistula, 14, 32
Urinary fistula, 14
Urine, burning of the, 95
Urine in disease of the stomach peassyue, i.e. green or eruginous, 60
Urine in noli-me-tangere, 60
Urine, the condition of, in piles, 59
Urine the, in lupus, 60
Uve, piles, 56

Valence of scabious, 129
Valence of scabious, to prepare, 97, 129
Valence of scabious, why so called, 98
Valence of tapsibarbastus, 69
Valence of wormode, 98
Index.

Valentia scabious, xxxi
Varone, Roger de, account of, 123
Veins, anatomy of saphenous, 61
Vena basilica, 54
Vena hepatica, explanation of the term, 121
Vena hepatica of arm, 121
Vena kilvyz, its anatomy, 57
Vena mesaurica, 78
Vena salvatella, anatomy of, 125
Vena salvatella, bleeding from, 61
Veneris pulv. sanguinis, xxix, 26, 28, 33, 89, 90,
Venomous apostemes, 81
Ventose, or cupping instruments, 120
Ventosyng, or cupping, 62
"Verbum caro factum est, 104, 135
"Verbum caro factum," value of the words against evil, 135
Verdigris, 49, 50
Vernilion, 82
Vertgrese, 65, 86
Vertgrese, its properties, 82
Verucale, piles, 56
Vervain, 63, 74
Violet, 76
Violet oil, 67, 69, 73
Violet oil, a method of preparing, 93
Virga pastoris, or the Teasel, 40, 119
Virgins rare, 90
Viride es, 82
Viride graeci ungt., 53
Virtues in woods, stones, and herbs, 104
Vitriol, 64, 65, 40, 41
Vitriol combust, 86
Vitriol plaster, preparation of, 81
Vitriol, uses of, 79, 80
Vitriol, varieties of, 79
Vitriole, varieties of, 79
Vitriolum arabicum, 79
Vitriolum ciprinum, 79
Vitriolum combustum, 79
Vitriolum romanum, 79

Warsop, hamlet of, 107
Water, cold, a styptic, 66
Watercress, 76
Water of almonds, to prepare, 95
Water of alum, 82
Water of plantain, 63, 74
Water of sulphur, 82
Wax, virgin, 30
Welked, meaning of word, 129
Wet cupping for piles, 62
Weybread, or Plantain, 117
Wheat bran for a clyster, 75
Wheat flour, 32
Wheat meal, 48, 63
Whey, a good vehicle for myrobalans, 62
White Friars church, a, John Arderne buried in, 134
White Friars, the church of the, 133
White of egg, 54
White ointment, varieties of, 54, 119
White poppy, 101
Whitlow, the, 42
Wild fire, an ointment for, 91
Wild fire, or eysipelas, 40, 133
Wilton, Lord Grey of, cured of fistula, 2
Wind relieved by a clyster, 28
Wine, great, 63
Wine to be used for wetting licium, 86
Wiseman, Richard, xiv
Witty men, 28, 30
Womb, 25, 26, 30, 39, 56, 59, 62, 63, 77, 78, 97
Womb, purging of, 71
Wombe, meaning of, 113
Women, medical, position of, at the school of Salerno, 119
Women, menstruating, hurtful to wounds, 88, 132
Woodall, John, xiv
Woodbine, 30
Woodbine, juice of, 44
Woodbynd, or woodbine, 117
Wooden tent, 48
Woodsour or alleluia, 68
Woods, stones and herbs, virtues in, 104, 135
Wormode, or wormwood, 30, 117, 174
Wormwood, valence of, 98
Wound, signs of a mundified, 27
Wounds, incurable, treatment of, 96
Index.

Wounds not to be dressed too often, 87
Wounds, the drier the better, 28
Wounds, treatment of, 98, 100
Wounds, when to be re-dressed, 88
Wrayste, the, xvii, 9, 23, 24, 112
Wyne, great, 63

Yard, burning of, 96
Ydropsy, piles a preservative from, 57
Yera pigra, 130

Yerd, cancer of, 92
Yolks of egg, 11, 65. See Egg
Ypocras, 21, 115
Ypoquistid, or Hypocistis, for piles, 63, 126

Yerung, treatment of, 52
Zingiber, 68
Ziannie, or tares, 100, 134
Zodiac and surgery, 16
Succaryne alum, 81
Succary, or sugar, 68
Robarts Library
due date
May 23, 1991

For telephone renewals
call
978-8450

2 million of our books